John Carter Brown.

BOUND BY W. PRATT FOR W. WYNNE

B.9

C

Translation from Part 3 De Bry. Small Voyages containing the Three Voyages of Gerald de Veer. —

— also French translation Paris 1598. No 534 Catalogue — Latin trans No 535 — other editions No 467–466 + 468 — See Note to No 534.

Mentioned or Carried [illegible] this English translation [illegible] Part 3.

THE
True and perfect Description of three Voyages, so strange and woonderfull, that the like hath neuer been heard of before:

Done and performed three yeares, one after the other, by the Ships of *Holland* and *Zeland*, on the North sides of *Norway*, *Muscouia* and *Tartaria*, towards the Kingdomes of *Cathaia* & *China*; shewing the discouerie of the Straights of *Weigates*, *Noua Zembla*, and the Countrie lying vnder 80. degrees; which is thought to be *Greenland*: where neuer any man had bin before: with the cruell Beares, and other Monsters of the Sea, and the vnsupportable and extreame cold that is found to be in those places.

And how that in the last Voyage, the Shippe was so inclosed by the Ice, that it was left there, whereby the men were forced to build a house in the cold and desart Countrie of *Noua Zembla* wherin they continued 10. monthes togeather, and neuer saw nor heard of any man, in most great cold and extreame miserie; and how after that, to saue their liues, they were constrained to sayle aboue 350. Dutch-miles, which is aboue 1000. miles English, in litle open Boates, along and ouer the maine Seas, in most great daunger, and with extreame labour, vnspeakable troubles, and great hunger.

Imprinted at London for *T. Pauier*.
1609.

JOHN CARTER BROWN

TO THE RIGHT WORshipfull, Sir *Thomas Smith* Knight, Gouernour of the *Muscouy* Company, &c.

RIGHT WORSHIPFVLL:

BEing intreated by some of my Friends, and principally by M. Richard Hakluyt (a diligent obseruer of all Proceedings in this nature) to Translate and publish these three yeares Trauelles and Discoueries, of the Hollanders to the North-easts: I could not deuise how to consecrate my Labours so properly to any, as to your selfe, considering not onely the generall good affection the whole Kingdome takes notice, that you beare to all Honorable actions of this kinde, be they for Discouerie, Traffique, or Plantation; but also in respect of that particular charge; most worthily recommended to your care, ouer the Trade of the English in those North-east Partes.

Many attempts and proffers (I confesse) there haue bin to find a passage by those pooreſt parts, to the richeſt; by those barbarous, to the most ciuile; those vnpeopled, to the most popular; those Desarts, to the most fertile Countries of the World: and of them all, none (I dare say) vndertaken with greater iudgement, with more obdurate Patience, euen aduersus Elementa, aduersus ipsam in illis locis rerum naturam, then these three by the Hollanders.

If any of our Nation be employed that way in time to come, here they haue a great part of their Voiage layd open, and the example of

that industrious people (first excited to this and other famous Voyages, by imitation of some of ours) for the conquering of all difficulties and dangers; those people (I say) that of all Christians, and for ought I know, of all Adams *Posteritie, haue first nauigated to 81. Degrees of Northerly Latitude, and wintered in 76. where they had no Inhabitants, but Foxes, Beares, and Deare, to keepe them company.*

And were it for nothing else, but to register the miraculous prouidence of the Creator, and his admirable and vnspeakeable workes in these congealed Climats, vnknowen vtterly to the Ancients, and to demostrate how much we are obliged to his omnipotent fauour, for planting vs in so temperate, so ciuill, and so Religious a part of the World, as this blessed Island; I thinke omission in this kinde were little lesse then Sacriledge.

As it is, I humbly desire you to vouch safe it your protection, and to esteeme mee,

Alwayes deuoted to your seruice,

WILLIAM PHILLIP.

The

The fyrſt part of the Naui-
gation into the North Seas.

IT is a moſt certaine and an aſſured aſſertion, that nothing doth more benefit and further the Common-wealth (ſpecially theſe Countries) then the art and knowledge of Nauigation, in regard that ſuch Countries and Nations as are ſtrong and mightie at Sea, haue the meanes and ready way to draw, fetch, and bring vnto them for their maintenaunce, all the principaleſt commodities and fruites of the earth, for that thereby they are inabled to bring all neceſſary things for the nouriſhment and ſuſtentation of man from the vttermoſt partes of the world, and to carry and conuay ſuch wares and Marchandizes, (whereof they haue great ſtore and aboundance) vnto the ſame places, which by reaſon of the art of Nauigation, and the commodities of the Sea, is eaſily to be effected and brought to paſſe. Which Nauigation as it dayly more & more increaſeth (to the great woonder and admiration of thoſe, that compare the Sea-faring & Nauigation vſed in our forefathers times, yea & that alſo that hath beene practiſed in our age, with that which now at this preſent is daily furthered & ſought out) ſo there are continually new voiages made, & ſtrange Coaſts diſcouered; the which although they be not done by the firſt, ſecõd, or third voiage, but after, by tract of time, firſt brought to their full effect, and deſired commoditie, and the fruits thereof, by continuance of time reaped. Yet we muſt not be abaſht, nor diſmayed, at the labour, toile, trauaile, and dãgers ſuſtayned in ſuch voiages, to that end made, although as I ſaid before the benefit thereof be not had nor ſeene in the firſt, ſecond, third, or more voiages, for what labour is more profitable, & worthier praiſe and commendation, then that which tendeth vnto the common good and benefit of all men? Although ſuch as are vnſkilfull, contemners, & deriders of mens diligence and proceedings therein, at the firſt eſteeme it an

As the art of Nauigation more increaſeth, ſo there are daily more new countries found out.

Diligence and continuance, effect that which is ſought.

We muſt not leaue of by ſome mens diſlike or diſpraiſe in our proceedings.

an vnprofitable and needlesse thing, when as the end proueth beneficiall & commodious. If the famous Nauigators Cortesius Nonius; and Megalanes, & others, that in their times, sought out and discouered the Kingdomes, Countries, and Ilands farre distant from vs, in the extreamest parts of the woyld; for the first, second, or third voyage, that had succeeded vnfortunately with them: had left off and giuen ouer their nauigatiõ; they had not afterward reaped nor enioyed the fruites, benefites, and commodities thereof. Alexander magnus (after he had woone all Grecia, and from thence entred into little & great Asia; and comming to the farthest parts of India, there found some difficultie to passe) sayd, If we had not gone forward, and persisted in our intent, which other men esteemed and held to be impossible, we had still remayned and staied in the entry of Cicilia, where as now we haue ouerrunne & past through all those large and spacious Countries: for nothing is found and effected all at one time, neither is any thing that is put in practise, presently brought to an end. To the which end, Cicero wisely saith; God hath giuen vs some things, & not all things, that our successours also might haue somewhat to doe. Therefore we must not leaue off, nor stay our pretence in the middle of our proceedinges, as long as there is any commoditie to be hoped, & in time to be obtayned: for that the greatest and richest treasures are hardliest to be found. But to make no long digression from our matter, concerning the dayly furtheraunce of the most necessarie and profitable art of Nauigation, that hath been brought to full effect, not without great charges, labour, and paines; ouerslipping and not shewing with how long and troublesome labour and toyle, continually had, the passages to the East and West *Indies*, America, Brasilia, and other places, through the straight of Magellanes, in the South sea, twise or thrise passing vnder the Line, and by those meanes other Countries & Ilands, were first found out and discouered.

A thing not continued can not be effected.

All things are effected in conuenient time.

Let vs looke into the White Seas, that are now so commonly sayled (on the north side of Muscouia) with what cumbersome labour and toyle, they were first discouered: What hath now made this Voyage so common and easie? is it not the same, and as long a voyage as it was, before it was fully knowne and found out? but the right courses, which at the first were to be sought, by crossing the Seas from one Land to another, & are now to be held aloofe into the Seas, and directly sayled; hath of difficult and toylesome, made them easie

That which in the beginning is hard, by continuance of time is made easie and light.

and

and ready Voyages.

This small Discourse I thought good to set downe, for an Introduction vnto the Reader, in regard that I haue vndertaken to describe the Three Voyages made into the North Seas, in three yeares, one after the other; behind Norway, and along and about Muscouia, towardes the Kingdome of Cathaia and China: whereof, the two last, I my selfe holpe to effect; and yet brought them not to the desired end that we well hoped.

First, to shew our diligent, and most toylesome labour and paynes taken, to find out the right course; which we could not bring to passe, as we well hoped, wished, and desired, and possible might haue found it, by crossing the Seas, if we had taken the right course; if the Ice and the shortnesse of time, and bad crosses had not hindered vs: And also to stoppe their mouthes, that report and say, that our proceeding therein, was wholly vnprofitable and fruiteless; which peraduenture in time to come, may turne vnto our great profite and commoditie. For he which proceedeth and continueth in a thing that seemeth to be impossible, is not to be discommended: but hee, that in regarde that the thing seemeth to be impossible, doth not proceed therein, but by his faint heartednesse and sloath, wholly leaueth it off.

The first finding is hard, but the second attempt is easier.

Wee haue assuredly found, that the onely and most hinderaunce to our voyage, was the Ice, that we found about Noua Zembla, vnder 73. 74. 75. and 76. degrees; and not so much vpon the Sea betweene both the Landes: whereby it appeareth, that not the neareneſſe of the North pole, but the Ice that commeth in and out from the Tartarian Sea, about Noua Zembla, caused vs to feele the greatest cold. Therefore in regard that the neareneſſe of the Pole was not the cause of the great cold that we felt, if we had had the meanes to haue held our appointed and intended course into the North-east, we had peraduenture found some enteraunce: which course we could not hold from Noua Zembla, because that there we entred amongst great store of Ice; and how it was about Noua Zembla, we could not tell, before we had sought it; and when we had sought it, we could not then alter our course, although also it is vncertaine, what we should haue done, if we had continued in our North-east course, because it is not yet found out. But it is true, that in the Countrie lying vnder 80. degrees, (which we esteeme to be Greenland) there is both Leaues and Grasse to be seene: Wherein, such Beastes as feed of Leaues and Grasse, (as

Not the neareneſſe of the North pole, but the Ice in the Tartarian sea, causeth the greatest cold.

Harts, Hindes, and such like beastes liue, whereas to the contrary In noua Zembla, there groweth nether leaues nor grasse, and there are no beasts therein but such as eate flesh, as Beares, & Foxes, &c. Although Noua Zembla, lyeth 4. 5. and 6. degrees more Southerly from the pole, then the other land aforesaid. It is also manifest, that vpon the South and North side of the line of the sunne on both sides, between both the Tropicos, vnder 23. degrees and a halfe, it is as hot, as it is right vnder the Line. What wonder then should it be, that about the North Pole also, and as many degrees on both sides, it should not bee colder then right vnder the Pole? I will not affirme this to bee true, because that the colde on both sides of the North Pole hath not as yet beene discouered and sought out, as the heat on the North and South side of the line hath beene. Onely thus much I will say, that although we held not our direct pretended course to the North-east, that therefore it is to be iudged, that the cold would haue let our passage through that way, for it was not the Sea, nor the neerenesse vnto the Pole, but the Ice about the land, that let & hindered vs (as I sayd before) for that as soone as we made from the land, & put more into the sea, although it was much further Northward, presently we felt more warmth, and in ỳ opinion our Pilote William Barents dyed, who notwithstanding the feareful and intollerable cold that he indured, yet he was not discouraged, but offered to lay wagers with diuers of vs, that by Gods helpe, he would bring that pretended voiage to an end, if he held his course North-east from the North Cape. But I will leaue that, and shewe you, of the three Voyages aforesaid, begun and set forth by the permission and furtherance of the generall States of the vnited Prouinces, and of Prince Maurice, as Admirall of the Sea, and the rich Towne of Amsterdam. Whereby the Reader may iudge and conceaue what is to bee done, for the most profite and aduantage, and what is to be left.

A comparison of the heate vnder the line, with the cold vnder the North Pole.

The resolute intent and opinions of William Barents.

First you must vnderstand, that in Anno 1594. there was 4. ships set forth out of the vnited Prouinces, whereof two were of Amsterdam; one of Zelandt, and one of Enckhuysen, that were appointed to saile into the North Seas, to discouer the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and China; North-ward from Norway, Muscouia, and about Tartaria, whereof William Barents, a notable skilfull and wise Pilote, was Commander ouer the Ships of Amsterdam, and with them vpon Whit-sunday departed from Amsterdam and went to the Texel.

Vpon

Vpon the fifth of June they sailed out of the Texel, and hauing a good wind and faire weather, vpon the 23. of June, they arriued at Kilduin in Muscouia, which for that it is a place well knowen and a common Voyage, I will make no further discription thereof.

The 29. of June, at foure of the clocke in the after noone, they set saile out of Kilduin, and so 13. or 14. miles out-right, sailed North-east, with a north north-west wind, and close weather.

The 30. of June they sayles East North-east 7. miles, till the Sunne was East South-east, with an North wind, with 2. Schower sailes, there they cast out their lead, at 100. fadome deepth, but found no ground.

From whence the same day they sailed East north-east 5. miles, till the Sunne was full South, hauing the wind North with 2. Schower sailes, where once againe they cast out the lead 100. fadome deepe, but found no ground, and then from noone to night the same day, they sailed East, & East and by North 13. miles, till the Sunne was North-west, and there casting out their lead, they had ground at 120. fadome, the ground being oasie, and blacke durt.

The 1. of July, after they had sailed one quarter 4. miles East, and East and by North, early in the morning they cast out the lead, & found ground at 60. fadome, where they had an oasie small sandy ground, and within an houre after they cast out the lead againe, and had ground at 52. fadome, being white sand mixed with blacke, and some-what oasie: after that they sailed 3. miles East and by North, where they had ground at 40. fadome, being gray sand mixed with white. From thence they sailed 2. miles East-ward, with a North north-east winde, there they had ground at 38. fadome, being red sand mixed with black, the Sunne being South-east and by east. From thence they sailed 3. miles, East and by South, & East South-east til noone, where they had the Sunne at 70. degrees and ¼. there they cast out the lead againe, and had ground at 39. fadome, being small gray sand, mixed with blacke stippelen and peeces of Shels.

Then againe they sailed 2. miles South-east, and then woond North-ward with an East north-east wind, and after sailed 6. miles North-east all that day, with a South-east wind, till the Sunne was North North-west, the weather being cold, and the lead being cast forth they found ground at 60. fadome, being small gray oasie sand, mixed with a little blacke, and great whole shels: after that the same Euening to the

first quarter, they sailed 5. miles, East noyth-east, and Noyth-east and by East, and after that East noyth-east, and Noyth-east and by East 5. miles, vntill the second of July in the Moyning, and there they had 65. fadome deepe, the ground sasie with blacke slime oy durt.

The same day from Moyning to Noone, they sailed 3. oy 4. miles East noyth-east, the wind blowing stiffe South-east, whereby at Noone they were foyced to table in the foye-saile, and driue with a Schower saile, in mistie weather, foy the space of 3. oy 4. miles, vntill Euening, holding East, and East and by South, after that the winde blew South-west, and about 5. of the clocke in the after-noone, they cast out the lead, but had no ground at 120. fadome. That Euening the weather cleared vp againe, and they sailed about 5. miles before the wind East noyth-east, foy the space of 3. houres, and then againe it began to be mistie, so that they durst not saile foyward, but lay hulling in the wind, where vpon Sunday moyning being the 3. of July, when the Sunne was Noyth-east, they cast out the lead and found ground at 125. fadome, being blacke durt oy slime.

From thence they sailed 8. Miles East Noyth-east, till the Sunne was South-east, and casting out the lead, found ground at 140. fadom, being blacke slimie durt, at which time they tooke the high of the Sun and found it to be 73. degrees and 6. minutes, & presently againe they cast out the lead, and had 130. fadome deepth, the ground being blacke slime. After that they sayled 6. oy 7. miles further East noyth-east, till the Sunne was Noyth-west.

On Sunday in the Moyning being the 3. of July, it was very faire and cleare weather, the wind blowing South-west, at which time William Barents found out the right Meridien, taking the high of the Sunne with his Crosse-staffe when it was South-east, and found it to be eleuated in the South-east 28. degrees and a halfe, and when it had past ouer West & by Noyth, it was but 28. degrees & a half aboue the Horizon, so that it differed 5. points and a half, which being deuided there rested 2. points and ¾. so that their compasse was altered 2. points. and ¾. as it appeared the same day, when the sunne was in her higth betweene South south-west, and south-west and by south, foy the Sun was south-west and by south, and yet was not declined, and they had 73. degrees and 6. minutes.

The 4. of July in the moyning, they sailed 4. Miles east and by noyth, and casting out the lead found ground at 125 fadome being sli-

mie.

nie. That night the weather was mistie againe, and in the Morning he winde was east, then they sailed 4. miles South-east and by south, ill the Sunne was east, and then againe they cast out the lead, & found round at 108. fadome, blacke durt, then they wound north-ward, & sailed 6. Miles, north north-east, and north-east and by north, vntill the Sunne was south south-west, and then they saw the Land of Noua Zembla, lying South-east and by East 6. or 7. miles from them, where they had blacke durty ground at 105. fadome. Then they woond southward againe, and sailed 6. Miles, south and by West, till the Sunne was West north-west, there they had 68. Fadome deepe, with durtie ground as before the wind being south-east.

Then they woond East-ward & sailed 6. Miles east and by south, at which time, William Barents tooke the heigth of the Sunne with his Trosse-staffe, when it was at the lowest, that is between north north-east, and east and by north, and found it to bee eleuated aboue the Horizon 6. degrees & $\frac{1}{3}$. part, his declination being 12. degrees & 55. minuts, from whence substracting the aforesaid heigth, there resteth 16. degrees and 35. minutes, which being substracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 73. degrees and 25. minutes which was, when they were about 5. or 6. miles from the Land of Noua Zembla.

Then they woond east-ward and sailed 5. miles, east & by south, and east South-east, and past by a long point of Land that lay out into the sea, which they named Langenes, and hard by that point East-ward, there was a great Bay, where they went a land with their boate, but found no people.

Three or foure Miles from Langenes east north-east, there lay a long point, and a Mile east-ward from the said point there was a great Bay, and vpon the east-side of the said Bay, there lay a Rock not very high aboue the water, and on the West-side of the Bay, there stood a sharpe little hill, easie to be knowne, before the Bay, it was 20. fadome deepth, the ground small blacke stones, like peasen from Langenes to Cape Bapo East north-east it is 4. miles.

From Cape Bapo to the West point of Lombsbay north-east and by north are 5. miles, and betweene them both there are 2. Creekes. Lombsbay is a great wide Bay, on the West-side thereof hauing a faire hauen 6. 7. or 8. fadome deepe, blacke sand, there they went on shore with their boate, & vpon the shore placed a beacon, made of an old Mast which they found there; Calling the Bay Lombsbay, because of

a cer-

a certaine kind of Beares so called, which they found there in great aboundance.

The East point of Lombsbay, is a long narrow point, & by it there lyeth an Island, and from that long point to Sea-ward in, there is a great Creeke. This Lombsbay lyeth vnder 74. Degrees and ½. part. From Lombsbay to the point of the Admirals Island, they sailed 6. or 7. Miles, North-east and by North. The Admirals Island is not very faire one the East-side, but a farre off very flat, so that you must shunne it long before you come at it, it is also very vneuen, for at one casting off the lead they had 10. fadome deepe, and presently at another casting of the lead they had but 6. fadome, and presently after that againe 10, 11, and 12. fadome, the streame running hard against the Flats.

From the East-end of the Admirals Island, to Cape Negro, that is the Blacke point, they sailed about 5. or 6. Miles, East North-east, and a Mile without the Black point it is 70. fadome deepe, the ground slimie, as vpon Pamphius, right East-ward of the Blacke point, there are 2. sharpe pointed hilles in the Creeke, that are easie to be knowen.

The 6. of July, the Sunne being North, they came right before the Blacke point with faire weather, this Blacke point lyeth vnder 75. Degrees and 20. minutes. From the Blacke point to Williams Island, they sailed 7. or 8. Miles, East North-east, and between them both about halfe a Mile, there lay a small Island.

The 7. of July they sailed from Williams Island, and then William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne, with his Crosse-staffe, and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon in the south-west and by south 53. Degrees and 6. minutes, his declination being 22. Degrees and 49. minutes, which being added to 53. Degrees and 6. minutes, make 75. Degrees and 55. minutes. This is the right height of the Pole of the said Island. In this Island they found great store of Driff-wood, & many Sea-horses being a kinde of fish that keepeth in the Sea, hauing very great teeth, which at this day are vsed instead of Iuorie or Elephants teeth, there also is a good road for ships, at 12. & 13. fadome deepe against all winds, except it be West south-west, and West windes, and there they found a piece of a Russia ship, and that day they had the wind East North-east, mistie weather.

The 9. of July they entered into Beeren-fort, vpon the road vnder Williams Island, and there they found a white Beare, which they per-

perceiuing, presently entered into their Boate, and shot her into the body with a musket, but the Beare shewed most wonderfull strength, which almost is not to be found in any beast, for no man euer heard the like to be done by any Lyon or cruel beast whatsoeuer: for notwithstanding that she was shot into the bodie, yet she leapt vp, & swame in the water, the men that were in the boate rowing after her, cast a rope about her necke, and by that meanes drew her at the sterne of the boat, for that not hauing seene the like Beare before, they thought to haue carryed her aliue in the shippe, and to haue shewed her for a strange wonder in Holland; but she vsed such force, that they were glad that they were rid of her, and contented themselues with her skin only, for she made such a noyse, and stroue in such sort, that it was admirable, wherewith they let her rest and gaue her more scope, with the rope that they held her by, and so drew her in that sort after them, by that meanes to wearie her: meane time, William Barents mave neerer to her, but the Beare swome to the boate, and with her fore-feet got hold of the sterne thereof, which William Barents perceiuing, said, she will there rest her selfe, but she had another meaning, for she vsed such force, that at last she had gotten half her body into the boat, wherewith the men were so abashed, that they run into ỹ further end of the boate, and thought verily to haue been spoiled by her, but by a strange means they were deliuered from her, for that the rope that was about her necke, caught hold vpon the hooke of the Ruther, whereby the Beare could get no further, but so was held backe, and hanging in that manner, one of the men boldly stept forth from the end of the Scute, and thrust her into the bodie with a Halfe-pike; & therewith she fell downe into the water, and so they rowed forward with her to the ship, drawing her after them, till shee was in a manner dead, wherewith they killed her out-right, and hauing fleaed her, brought the skinne to Amsterdam.

The 20. of July, they sailed out of Beren-fort frõ Williams Island, & the same day in the morning got to the Island of Crosses, and there went on land with their Pinnace, and found the Iland to bee barren, and full of Cliffes and Rocks; in it there was a small Hauen, whereinto they rowed with their boat. This Island is about halfe a Mile long, and reacheth East and West; on the West end it hath a Banke, about a third part of a Mile long, and at the East end also another Banke, vpon this Island there stand 2. great Crosses, the Island

lyeth about 2. long Miles from the firme land, and vnder the East-end thereof there is good road, at 26. fadome soft ground; and somewhat closer to the Island on the Strand, at 9. fadome sandy ground.

From the Island of Crosses to the point of Cape Nassawe, they sailed east, and east and by north about 8. miles: it is a long flat point which you must bee carefull to shunne, for thereabouts at 7. fadome there were flats or sholes, very farre from the Land; It lyeth almost vnder 76. Degrees and a halfe. From the West-end of Williams Island, to the Island with the Crosses is 3. miles, the course North.

From Nassaw point they sailed East and by South, and east south-east 5. miles, & then they thought that they saw land in North-east and by East, & sailed towards it 5. miles North-east to descrie it, thinking it to be another land, that lay north-ward from Noua Zembla, but it began to blow so hard out of the West, that they were forced to take in their Marsaile, & yet the wind rose in such manner, that they were forced to take in all their sailes, and the sea went so hollow, that they were constrained to driue 16. houres together without saile 8. or 9. Miles East north-east.

The 11. of July their boat was by a great waue of the sea sunke to the ground, and by that meanes they lost it, and after that they draue without sailes 5. miles, East and by South; at last the Sunne being almost South-east, the wind came about to the North-west, and then the weather began somewhat to cleare vp, but yet it was very mistie. Then they hoysed vp their sailes againe and sailed 4. Miles till night, that the Sunne was North and by East, and there they had 60. fadome deepth, muddie ground, and then they saw certaine flakes of Ice, at which time vpon the 12. of July they wound west, and held North-west, and sailed about a mile with mistie weather, and a north-west wind, and sailed vp & downe west south-west 3. or 4. Miles to see if they could find their boat againe: after that they wound againe with the wind, and sayled 4. miles south-east, till the sunne was south-west, and then they were close by the Land of Noua Zembla, that lay East and by North, and West & by south; from thence they wound ouer againe till noone and sayled 3. Miles, North and by West, and then till the Sunne was North-west, they held North-west and by North 3. Miles, then they wound East-ward and sailed 4. or 5. Miles north-east, and by east.

The 13. of July at night, they found great store of Ice, as much as

the

they could descrie out of the top, that lay as if it had been a plaine field of Ice, then they wound West-ward ouer from the Ice, and sailed about 4. miles West south-west, till the Sunne was east and by north, and that they saw the Land of Noua Zembla, lying South south-east from them.

Then they wound North-ward againe and sailed 2. Miles, till the Sunne was East south-east, and then againe found great store of Ice, and after that sailed South-west and by south 3. miles.

The 14. of July, they wound North-ward againe, & sayled with 2. Schower sailes North and by East, and North north-east 5. or 6. Miles, to the height of 77. Degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$ part, and entred againe amongst the Ice, being so broad that they could not see ouer it, there they had no ground at 100. fadome, and then it blew hard West north-west.

From thence they wound South-ward, and sailed South south-west 7. or 8. miles, & came againe by the land that shewed to be 4. or 5. high hilles. Then they wound Northward, and till Euening sayled North 6. Miles, but there againe they found Ice.

From thence they wound South-ward and sailed South and by west 6. miles, and then againe entred into Ice.

The 15. of July, they wound South-ward againe, saylng South and by west 6. miles, and in the Morning, were by the land of Noua Zembla againe, the Sunne being about North-east.

From thence they wound North-ward againe, and sayled North and by east 7. miles, and entred againe into the Ice. Then they wound South-ward againe, the Sunne being west and sailed South south-west, and south-west and by south 8. or 9. miles, vpon the 16. of July.

From thence they wound North-ward, and sailed north and by east 4. miles, after that againe they wound west-ward and sailed West and by south 4. miles, and then they sailed north north-west 4. miles, and then the wind blew north north-east, and it froze hard; this was vpon the 17. of July.

Then they wound East-ward, and sailed East till noone, 3. Miles, and after that east and by south 3. Miles; from thence about Euening they wound northward & sailed north and by east 5. miles, till the 18. of July in the morning: then they sailed north & by west 4. miles, & there entred againe amongst a great many flakes of Ice, from whence they wound southward, & close by the Ice they had no ground at 150. fadom.

Then they sayled about 2. houres South-east, and East south-east, with mystie weather, & came to a flake of Ice, which was so broad that they could not see ouer it, it being faire still weather, and yet it froze, and so sailed along by the Ice 2. houres; after that it was so mistie, that they could see nothing round about them, and sailed South-west two Miles.

The same day William Barents tooke the height of the Sun, with his Astrolabium, and then they were vnder 77. degrees and a ¼ of the Pole, and sailed South-ward 6. Miles, and perceiued the firme land, lying South from them.

Then they sailed till the 19. of July in the Morning, West south-west, 6. or 7. miles, with a North-west wind, and mistie weather, & after that South-west and south-west and by west 7. miles, the Sunne being 77. degrees 5. minutes lesse. Then they sailed 2. miles South-west, & were close by the land of Noua Zembla, about Cape Nassaue.

From thence they wound north-ward, & sailed north 8. miles, with a West north-west wind, and a mist, and till the 20. of July in the Morning North-east and by north 3. or 4. miles, and when the Sunne was east they wound West, and till Euening sailed South-west 5. or 6. miles, with mistie weather, and then south-west and by south 7. miles, till the 21. of July in the Morning.

Then they wound North-ward againe, and from Morning till euening sailed North-west and by west 9. Miles, with mistie weather, and againe north-west and by west 3. miles, and then wound South-ward, and till the 22. of July in the Morning sailed South South-west 3. Miles, with mistie weather, and till euening South and by West, 9. Miles, all mistie weather.

After that they wound North-ward againe, and sailed North-west and by North 3. Miles, and then 2. Miles north-west, and in the morning being the 23. of July the wind blew North-west, and then they cast out the lead, and had 48. fadome muddie ground.

Then they sailed 2. Miles North north-east and North & by East, and 2. Miles North-east, at 46. fadome deepe, after that they wound West-ward, and sailed west and by north 6. miles, there it was 60. fadome deepe, muddy ground.

Then they wound Eastward and sailed 3. miles East and by north, then againe 9. or 10. miles east and east & by South, and after that 5. or 6. miles East and east and by south, & after that 5. or 6. miles more, east

and

and by south, till euening, being the 24. of July; then againe 4. Miles South-east and by east, the wind being east North-east.

Then they woond North-ward, and till the 25. of July in the Morning sailed North and north and by West 4. miles, there they had 130. fadome deepe muddie ground; then they sailed north-ward where they had 100. fadome deepe, and there they saw the Ice in the North-east, and then againe they sailed 2. miles, North and by West.

Then they woond South-ward, towards the Ice, and sailed south-east one mile; after that they wound North-ward againe, and sailed North 6. Miles, and were so inclosed about with flakes of Ice, that out of the top they could not discerne any thing beyond it, and sought to get through the Ice, but they could not passe beyond it, and therefore in the euening they wound south-ward againe, and sailed along by the Ice, south & by west 5. miles, & after that south south-east 3. miles.

The 25. of July at night, they tooke the heigth of the Sunne, when it was at the lowest between North and north-east, and north-east and by north, it being eleuated aboue the Horizon 6. degrees, and ¾ his declinatiõ being 19. degrees 50. minutes, now take 6. degrees ¼ from 19. degrees and 50. minuts, and there resteth 13. degrees 5. minutes, which substracted from 90. there resteth 77. degrees lesse 5. minutes.

The 26. of July, in the Morning they sailed 6. miles South south-east, till the Sunne was South-west, & then South-east 6. miles, and were within a mile of the land of Noua Zembla, & then wound north-ward from the land and sailed 5. miles North-west with an east wind, but in the Euening they wound South-ward againe, and sailed south-south-east 7. Miles, and were close by the Land.

Then they wound north-ward againe, and sailed North north-east 2. or 3. Miles: from thence they wound South-ward, and sailed South south-east 2. or 3. Miles, and came againe to Cape Trust.

Then they wound againe from the Land, North-east, about halfe a mile, and were ouer against the sandes of 4. fadome deepe, betweene the rocke and the land, and there the sands were 10. fadome deepe, the ground being small blacke stones; then they sailed North-west a little while, till they had 43. fadome deepe soft ground.

From thence they sailed North-east 4. Miles, vpon the 27. of July, with an East south-east wind, and wound South-ward againe, Where they found 70. fadome deepe, clay ground, and sayled south, and South and by East 4. miles, and came to a great Creek; & a Mile

and a halfe, from thence there lay a banke of sand of 18. fadome deepe, clay sandy ground, and betweene that sand or banke & the land, it was 60. and 50. fadome deepe, the coast reaching east and west by the Compasse.

In the euening they wound stife North-ward, and sailed 3. Miles North north-east; that day it was mistie, and in the night cleare, and William Barents tooke the height of the sunne with his Crosse-staffe, and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 5. degrees 40. minutes, his declination being 19. degrees 25. minutes, from whence substracting 5. Degrees 40. minutes, there resteth 13 Degrees 45. minutes, which substracted from 90. rested 76. Degrees 31. minutes, for the height of the Pole.

Upon the 28. of July, they sailed 3. miles North north-east, and after that wound South-ward, and sailed 6. miles South south-east, and yet were then 3. or 4. miles from the land.

The 28. of July, the height of the sun being taken at noone, with the Astrolabiū, it was found to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 57 degrees & 6. minutes, her declination being 19. degrees & 18 minutes, which in all is 76. degrees and 24. minutes, they being then about 4. miles from the land of Noua Zembla, that lay all couered ouer with Snow, the weather being cleare, and the wind East.

Then againe (the Sunne being about South-west) they wound North-ward and sailed one mile North North-east, and then wound againe, and sailed another mile South-east, then they wound North-ward againe, and sailed 4. miles North-east and North-east and by North.

The same day the height of the sunne being taken it was found to be 76. Degrees and 24. minutes, & then they sailed North-east 3. Miles, & after that North-east and by east 4. miles, and vpon the 29. of July came into the Ice againe.

The 29. of July the height of the Sunne being taken with the Crosse-Staffe, Astrolabium, and Quadrant, they found it to bee eleuated aboue the Horizon 32. degrees, her declination being 19. Degrees, which substracted from 32. there resteth 13. Degrees of the Equator, which being substracted from 90. there rested 77. Degrees, and then the neerest north point of Noua Zembla, called the ice point, lay right East from them.

There

There they found certaine Stones that glittered like gold, which for that cause they named gold-Stones, and there also they had a faire Bay with sandy ground.

Upon the same day they wound South-ward againe, and sailed South-east 2. miles betweene the Land and the Ice, and after that from the Ice point East, and to the South-ward 6. Miles to the Islands of Orange; and there they laboured forward betweene the Land and the Ice, with faire still weather, and vpon the 31. of July got to the Islands of Orange. And there went to one of those Islands, where they found about 200. Walrushen or Sea-horses, lying vpon the shoare to bathe themselues in the sunne. This Sea-horse is a wonderfull strong monster of the sea, much bigger then an Oxe, which keepes continually in the seas, hauing a skinne like a Sea-calfe or Seale, with very short haire, mouthed like a Lyon, and many times they lie vpon the Ice; they are hardly killed vnlesse you strike them iust vpon the fore-head, it hath foure feet, but no eares, and commonly it hath one or two yong ones at a time. And when the Fisher-men chance to finde them vpon a flake of Ice with their yong ones, shee casteth her yong ones before her into the water, and then takes them in her armes and so plungeth vp and downe with them, and when shee will reuenge her selfe vpon the boats, or make resistance against them, then she casts her yong ones from her againe, & with all her force goeth towards the Boate, (whereby our men were once in no small danger, for that the Sea-horse had almost stricken her teeth into the sterne of their Boate) thinking to ouerthrowe it, but by meanes of the great cry that the men made, shee was afraid, and swomme away againe, and tooke her yong ones againe in her armes. They haue two teeth sticking out of their mouthes on each side one, each beeing about halfe an Elle long, and are esteemed to bee as good as any Iuorie or Elephants teeth, specially in Muscouia, Tartaria, and there abouts where they are knowne, for they are as white, hard, and euen as Iuory.

Those Sea-horses that lay bathing themselues vpon the Land, our men supposing that they could not defend themselues beeing out of the water, went on shoare to assaile them, and fought with thē, to get their teeth that are so rich, but they brake all their Hatchets, Curtle-axes, and Pikes in pieces, and could not kill one of them, but struche some of their teeth out of their mouthes, which they tooke with them: and when they could get nothing against them by fighting, they

agreed

agreed to goe aboard the ship, to fetch some of their great Ordinance, to shoot at them therewith; but it began to blow so hard, that it rent the Ice into great peices, so that they were forced not to do it, & therewith they found a great white Beare that slept, which they shot into the body, but she ranne away, and entred into the water; the men following her with their boat, and kil'd her out-right, and then drew her vpon the Ice, and so sticking a halfe pike vp-right, bound her fast vnto it, thinking to fetch her when they came backe againe, to shoot at the Sea-horses with their Ordinance, but for that it began more and more to blow, and the Ice therewith brake in peeces, they did nothing at all.

After that W. Barents had begun this voyage vpon the fifth of June, 1594. and at that time (as I sayd before) set saile out of the Texell, the 23. of the same month arriuing at Kilduin in Muscouia, and from thence tooke his course on the North side of Noua Zembla, wherein he continued till the first of August, with such aduentures as are before declared, till he came to the Island of Orange: after he had taken all that paine, and finding that he could hardly get through, to accomplish and ende his pretended Voyage, his men also beginning to bee weary and would saile no further, they all together agreed to returne back againe, to meet with the other ships that had taken their course to the Weygates, or the Straights of Nassawe, to know what discoueries they had made there.

There returne backe againe,

The first of August they turned their course to saile backe againe from the Islands of Orange, and sailed west and west by south 6. miles to the Ice point.

From the Ice point to the Cape of Comfort, they sailed West and somewhat South 30. Miles, betweene them both there lyeth very high Land, but the Cape of Comfort is very low flat land, and on the west end thereof there standeth foure or fiue blacke houels or little hilles like country houses.

Upon the 3. of August, from the Cape of Comfort they wound North-ward, and sailed 8. Miles north-west, and by north, and North north-west, and about Noone they wound South-ward, till euening, and sailed south and by west, & south-south-west 7. Miles, & then came to a long narrow point of land one Cape Nassaw.

In the Euening they wound North-ward againe, and sailed north and by east 2. Miles, then the winde came North, and therefore they wound West-ward againe, & sailed North north-west one Mile, then

the

wind turned east, and with that they sailed from the 4. of August in the Morning till Noone West and by north 5. or 6. Miles, after that they sailed till Euening South-west 5. Miles, and after that South-west 2. Miles more, and fell vpon a low flat land which on the east-end had a white patche or peece of ground.

After that they sailed till Morning, being the 5. of August, West south-west, 5. miles, then south-west, 14. Miles, and then West 3. miles till the 6. of August.

The 6. of August they sailed West south-west, 2. or 3. Miles, then South-west, and south-west, and by South 4. or 5. miles, then south-west and by west 3. miles, and then South-west and by West 3. miles, and after that west south-west and South-west and by south 3. miles, till the 7. of August.

The 7. of August till Noone they sailed 3. miles west south-west, then 3. Miles west, and then they wound South-ward till Euening, and sailed 3. miles South-east and South-east and by east, then againe west south-west, 2. Miles, after that they sailed South 3. Miles, till the 8. of August in the Morning, with a West South-west winde.

The 8. of August they sailed South-east and by South 10. Miles, and then South-east and by East vntill Euening 5. Miles, and then came to a low flat land, that lay south-west and by South, and North-east and by North, and so sailed 5. Miles more, and there they had 36. fadome deepe, 2. Miles from the land, the ground blacke sand; There they sailed towards the land, till they were at 12. fadome, and halfe a Mile from the land it was Stony ground.

From thence the land reacheth south-ward for 3. miles, to the other low point that had a blacke Rocke lying close by it, and from thence the land reacheth South south-east 3. miles, to another point; and there lay a little low Island from the point, and within halfe a mile of the land it was flat ground, at 8. 9. and 10. fadome deepe, which they called the black Island, because it shewed blacke aboue, then it was very mistie, so that they lay in the wind, and sailed 3. Miles West North-west, but when it cleared vp, they wound towards the land againe, and the Sunne being South, they came right against the Blacke Island, and had held their course East South-east.

There W. Barents tooke the height of the sunne it being vnder 71. degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$, and there they found a great Creeke, which William Barents iudged to be the place where Oliuer Brunel had beene before,

called Costincsarth.

From the Blacke Iland, they sailed South, and South and by east to another small point 3. miles, on which point there stood a Crosse, and therefore they called it the Crosse-point, there also there was a flat Bay, and low water, 5. 6. or 7. fadome deep, soft ground.

From Crosse-point they sailed along by the land South South-east 4. Miles, and then came to another small point, which behinde it had a great Creeke, that reached East-ward: This point they called the fifth-point or S. Laurence point. From the fifth point they sailed to the Sconce point 3. Miles, South south-east, and there lay a long blacke Rocke close by the land, whereon there stood a Crosse; then they entered into the Ice againe, and put inward to the Sea because of the Ice. Their intent was to saile along the coast of Noua Zembla to the Wey-gates, but by reason that the Ice met them, they wound West-ward, and from the 9. of August in the Euening, till the 10. of August in the Morning, sayled West and by North 11. Miles, and after that 4. miles west north-west, and North-west and by west, the winde being North; in the Morning they wound East-ward againe, and sailed vntill Euening 10. Miles East and east and by south; after that east and east and by north 4. Miles, and there they saw land, and were right against a great Creeke, where with their boat they went on land, and there found a faire Hauen 5. fadome deepe, sandy ground. This Creeke on the North-side hath 3. blacke points, and about the 3. points lyeth the road, but you must keepe somewhat from the 3. point, for it is stonie, and betweene the 2. and 3. point there is another faire Bay, for North-west, North; and North-east winds, blacke sandy ground. This Bay they called S. Laurence Bay, and there they tooke the height of the Sunne, which was 70. degrees and $\frac{3}{4}$.

From S. Laurence Bay, south south-east 2. miles to Sconce point, there lay a long blacke rocke, close by the land, whereon there stood a Crosse, there they went on land with their boat, & perceiued that some men had bin there, and that they were fled to saue themselues, for there they found 6. Sacks with Rie-meale buried in the ground, and a heap of stones by the Crosse, and a bullet for a great piece, and there abouts also there stood another Crosse, with 3. houses made of wood, after the North-countrey manner: and in the houses they found many barrels of Pike-staues, whereby they coniectured, that there they vsed to take Salmons, and by them stood 5. or 6. Coffins, by graues, with dead

meus

mens bones, the Coffins standing vpon the ground all filled vp with stones; there also lay a broken Russia ship, the Keele thereof being 44. foot long, but they could see no man on the land: it is a faire Hauen for all winds, which they called the Meale-hauen, because of the Meale that they found there.

From the blacke Rocke or Cliffe with the Crosse, 2. Miles South south-east there lay a low Island, a little into the Sea; from whence they sailed 9. or 10. Miles South south-east, there the height of the Sunne was 70. degrees and 50. minutes, when it was South south-west.

From that Island they sailed along by the land 4. miles South-east and by South, there they came to 2. Islands, whereof the vttermost lay a mile from the land: those Islands they called S. Clara.

Then they entered into the Ice againe, and wound inward to sea, in the wind, and sailed from the Island vntill Euening West South-west 4. Miles, the wind being North-west; that Euening it was very miltie, and then they had 80. fadom deepe.

Then againe they sailed South-west and by West, and West South-west, 3. Miles, there they had 70. fadome deepe, and so sayled till the thirteenth of August in the Morning, South West and by West foure Miles, two houres before they had ground at fiftie fiue Fadome, and in the Morning at fortie fiue Fadome, soft muddy ground.

Then they sayled till Noone sixe Miles South-west, and had twentie foure Fadome deepe, blacke sandie ground, and within one houre after, they had two and twentie Fadome deepe, browne reddish sand; then they sailed sixe Miles South-west, with fifteene fadome deepe, red sand: after that two Miles South-west, and there it was fifteene Fadome deepe, red sand, and there they sawe land and sayled forward South-west vntill Euening, till wee were within halfe a mile of the land, and there it was seuen fadome deepe, sandy ground, the land, being low flat Downes reaching East and West.

Then they wound from the land, and sailed North, and North and by East 4. miles, from thence they wound to land againe, and sayled til the 14. of August 5. or 6. miles south-west, sailing close by the land, which (as they gesse) was the Island of Colgoyen, there they sailed by the lãd east-ward 4. miles; after that 3. miles east, & east & by south,

then the weather became mistie, whereby they could not see the land, and had shallow flat water at 7. or 8. fadome; then they tooke in the Marsaile and lay in the wind, till it was cleare weather againe, and then the Sunne was South south-west, yet they could not see the land: there they had 100. fadome deepe, sandy ground, then they sailed East 7. miles; after that againe 2. miles East south-east, and South-east and by east, & againe till the 15. of August in the morning, 9. miles East south-east, then from morning till noone they sailed 4. Miles east south-east, and sailed ouer a flat or land, of 9. or 10. fadome deepe, sandy ground, but could see no land, and about an houre before noone it began to waxe deeper, for then wee had 12. and 13. fadome water, and then wee sayled East south-east 3. miles, till the Sunne was South-west.

The same day the sunne being south-west, William Barents tooke the height thereof, and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 35. degrees, his declination being 14. degrees and $\frac{1}{4}$ so ỹ as there wanted 55. degrees of 90. which 55. and 14. Degrees and $\frac{1}{4}$ being both added together, made 69. degrees 15. minutes, which was the height of the Pole in that place, the winde being North-west, then they sailed 2. Miles more East-ward, and came to the Islands called Matsloe and Delgoy, and there in the morning they meet with the other shippes of their company, being of Zelandt and Enck-huysen, that came out of Wey-gates the same day, there they shewed each other where they had bin, and how farre each of them had sailed, and discouered.

The ship of Enck-huysen had past the Straights of Wey-gates, and said, that at the end of Wey-gates he had found a large sea, and that they had sailed 50. or 60. Miles further East-ward, and were of opinion that they had been about the riuer of Obi, that commeth out of Tartaria, & that the land of Tartaria reacheth north-east-ward againe from thence, whereby they thought that they were not far from Cape Tabin, which is ỹ point of Tartaria, that reacheth towards the kingdom of Chathai, North-east and then south-ward, and so thinking that they had discouered inough for that time, & that it was too late in the yeare to saile any further, as also that their Commission was to discouer the scituation, and to come home againe before winter, they turned againe towards the Wei-gates, and came to an Island about 5. Miles great, lying south-east from Wei-gates on the Tartarian side, and called it the States Island, there they found many Stones, that

were of a Cristale Mountaine being a kind of Diamont.

When they were met together as I sayd before, they made signes of ioy, discharging some of their ordinance, and were merry, the other shippes thinking that William Barents had sailed round about Noua Zembla, & had come backe againe through the Wei-gates: & after they had shewed each other what they had done, and made signes of ioy for their meeting, they set their course to turne backe againe for Holland, and vpon the 16. of August they went vnder the Ilands of Matsloe and Delgoy, and put into the road, because the wind was north-west, and lay there till the 18. of August.

The 18. of August they set saile, and went forward West north-west, and almost West and by North, and so sailed 12. miles, and then west and by south 6. Miles, and came to a sand of scarce 5. fadome deepe, with a north-west wind, and in the euening they wound northward and sailed East north-east 7. or 8. miles, the wind being northerly, & then they wound West-ward & sailed till the 19. of August in the morning west 2. miles, then 2. miles south-west, and after that 2. miles south-east: there they wound West-ward againe, and sailed till Euening with a calme, and after that had an East winde, and at first sailed West north-west, and North-west and by west 6. or 7. Miles, and had ground at 12. fadome: then till the 20. of August in the morning, they sailed West north-west, and north-west and by West, 7. miles with an Easterly wind, & then againe sailed West north-west, and North-west and by West 7. miles, then West north-west 4. Miles, and drawe forward till euening with a calme: after that they sailed West north-west and North-west and by west 7. Miles, and in the night time came to a sand of 3. fadome deepe right against the land, and so sailed along by it, first one mile North, then 3. Miles North north-west, and it was sandy hilly land, and many points: and then sailed on forward with 9. or 10. fadome deepe, along by the land, till noone, being the 21. of August, North-west 5. Miles; and the West point of the land, called Candinaes, lay north-west from them 4. Miles.

From thence they sailed 4. Miles North north-west, and then north-west and by North 4. Miles, and 3. Miles more North-west, and north-west & by North, and then North-west 4. Miles, til the 22. of August in the Morning: and that morning they sailed North-west 7. miles, & so till euening, west north-west & north-west & by west 15. miles, the wind being north, after that 8. miles more west north-west,

and then till the 23. of August at Noone, West noyth-west 11. miles, the same day at noone the Sunne was eleuated aboue the Horizon 31. Degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$ part, his declination was 11. Degeees and $\frac{2}{3}$ partes; so that it wanted 58. Degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$ of 90. Degrees, and adding the declination being 11. Degrees $\frac{2}{3}$ to 58. Degrees, and $\frac{1}{3}$ partes, then the height of the Pole was 70. Degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$ part: then they sailed Noyth-west, and noyth-west and by west, till Euening 8. miles, and then Noyth-west and by west, and West noyth-west 5. Miles, and then vntill the 24. of August in the Moyning, Noyth-west, and by west 6. miles, after that West, and West south-west, 3. Miles, and then past close by the Island of Ware-huysen in the roade. From Ware-huysen hither-ward because the way is well knowne, I neede not to write thereof, but that from thence they sailed altogether homeward, and kept company together till they came to the Texel, where the ship of Zelandt past by, and William Barents with his Pinnace, came vpon a faire day, being the 16. of September before Amsterdam, and the ship of Enck-huysen, to Enck-huysen, from whence they were set foyth. William Barents men brought a Sea-horse to Amsterdam, being of a wonderfull greatnesse, which they tooke vpon a flake of Ice, and killed it.

The end of this Voiage.

A Briefe Declaration of

a Second Nauigation made in Anno 1595. Behinde *Norway*, *Muscouia*, and *Tartaria*, towards the Kingdoms of *Cathaia* and *China*.

THE 4. ships aforesaid being returned home about Harvest-time, in Anno 1594. they were in good hope that the Voiage aforesaid would be done, by passing along through the Straights of Weygates, and specially by the report made by the 2. ships of Zelandt, and Enck-huysen, wherein Iohn Huyghen of Linschoten was committed, who declared the manner of their trauell in such sort, that the Generall States and Prince Maurice resolued, in the beginning of the next yeare to prepare certaine ships, not only (as they went before) to discouer the passage, but to send certaine wares and Merchandiles thither, wherein the Marchants might lade what wares they would, with certaine Factors to sell the saide wares, in such places as they should arriue, neither paying fraight nor custome. Peter Plantius a learned Cosmographer being a great furtherer and setter forward of this Voiage, and was their chiefe instructer therein, setting downe the situation of the Coasts of Tartaria, Cathaia, and China; but how they lye, it is not yet sufficiently discouered, for that the courses and rules by him set downe, were not fully effected, by meanes of some inconueniences that fell out, which by reason of the shortnesse of time could not be holpen. The reasons that some men (not greatly affected to this Voyage) vse to propound, to affirme it not possible to be done, are taken (as they say) out of some old & auncient Writers: which is, that 350. miles at the least of the north Pole on both sides are not to be sailed

sailed, which appeareth not to be true, for that the white Sea, and farther North-ward, is now sayled & daily sight in, cleane contrary to the writings and opinions of auncient Writers; yea, & how many places hath bin discouered that were not knowne in times past? It is also no marueile (as in the beginning of the first description of this Voyage I haue sayd) that vnder the North Pole for 23. degrees, it is as cold on both sides, one as the other, although it hath not beene fully discouered. Who would beleeue that in the Periudan Mountaines, and the Alpes that lye betweene Spaine, Italie, Germanie, and France, there is so great cold, that the Snow thereon neuer melteth, and yet lye a great deale neerer the Sunne, then the Countries lying on the North-Seas doe, being low Countries; by what meanes then is it so cold in those Hilles? onely by meanes of the deepe Vallies wherein the Snow lyes so deepe, that the Sunne cannot shine vpon the ground, by reason that the high hilles keepe the Sunne from shining on them. So it is (as I iudge) with the Ice in the Tartarian seas, which is also called the Ice-sea, about Noua Zembla, where the Ice that commeth into those seas out of the Riuers that are in Tartaria and Cathaia, can not melt, by reason of the great quantitie thereof, and for that the sun sheweth not high aboue those places, & therefore casteth not so great a heat, as it can easily melt: which is the cause that the Ice lyeth there still, as the Snowe doth in the Hilles of Spaine aforesayd, and that the sayd Ice maketh it farre colder there, then it is a great deale neerer the Pole in the large seas, and although those places that are not discouered, cannot bee so well described, as if they were discouered: yet I thought good to say thus much for a memoriall; and now I will proceed to the declaration of the second Voyage made into the North-seas.

In Anno 1595. The generall States of the vnited Prouinces, and Prince Maurice, caused seuen shippes to bee prepared to sayle through the Wey-gates or the Staights of Nassaue, to the Kingdome of Cathaia and China: Two out of Amsterdam, two out of Zelandt, two out of Enck-huysen, and one out of Roterdam: sixe of them laden with diuers kindes of Wares, Marchandizes, and with Money, and Factors to sell the said wares; the seuenth beeing a Pinace, that had Commission, when the other shippes were past about the Cape de Tabin (which is the furthest point of Tartaria) or so farre that they might saile forth South-

ward

vard, without any let or hinderance of the Ice, to turne backe againe, nd to bring Newes thereof: and I being in William Barents ship, hat was our chiefe Pilote, and Iames Hemſ-kerke chiefe Factor, hought good to write downe the same in order, as it is here after de- lared, as I did the first Voyage, according to the course and stree- hing of the land as it lyeth.

First, after we had been mustered at Amsterdam, and every man aken an oath, that was then purposely ministered vnto vs; vpon the 8. of June wee sailed to the Texel, from thence to put to sea with ther ships that were appointed to meet vs at a certaine day; & so to be- gin our Voiage in the Name of God.

The 2. of July wee set saile out of the Texel, in the Morning at neake of day, holding our course North west and by North, and say- ed about sixe miles.

After that wee sailed North north-west 18. miles, till the 3. of Ju- y in the Morning, being then as wee esteemed vnder 55. Degrees, hen the wind being North-west, and North north-west, calme wea- her, wee sailed West, and West and by South 4. Miles, till the 4. f July in the Morning: after that the winde being North north- west, and rather more Northerly, wee sayled West, and west and by North 15. Miles, till the 5. of July in the Morning, and after that . Miles more till the Sunne was west.

Then we wound about and sailed 10. Miles North-east, till the 6. f July in the Morning, and so held on our course for the space of 24. niles till the 7. of July, the Sunne being South, and held the same ourse for 8. Miles, till mid-night.

Then wee wound about and sailed West south-west fourteene Miles, till the ninth of July in the Morning, and then againe wee ound North East-ward, till Euening and so sayled about tenne Miles.

And then eighteene Miles more east-ward, till the tenth of July n the Euening; then we wound about againe and sailed South-west, ight Miles, till the 11. of July, the Sunne then being South- East.

Then wee wound North, and North and by East, about sixteene Miles, till the twelue of July, and then North and by West t.. niles.

The 13. of July wee wound about againe, and sailed South-

west, and West South-west 10. Miles, till about three houres before Euening: then wee wound againe, and sailed North north-east 10. Miles, till the 14. of July, the Sunne being South South-east, and then North and by East, and North north-east 18. Miles, till the 15. of July in the Morning: after that North and by East 12. miles, vntill Euening, then wee saw Norway: and then wee sayled North and by East 18. Miles, till the 16. of July in the Euening; at that time the Sunne being North-west, and vpon the 17. of July, North-east, and North-east and by North, 24. Miles, till the sunne was in the West.

Then againe we sayled north-east 20. miles, till the 18. of July, the Sunne being North-west, from thence wee sayled North-west, and by North 18. Miles, till the 19. of July, when the Sunne was west.

From thence againe we wound about; North-east and by North, and North-east till the 20. of July, while sixe Glasses were run out, in the first quarter, and then stayed for our Pinnace, that could not follow vs, because the wind blew so stiffe: that quarter being out, we saw our company lying to Lee-ward, to stay for vs, and when wee were gotten to them, wee helde our course (as before) till Euening, and sailed about 30. Miles.

Then we sayled South-east and by East 26. Miles, till the 21. of July in the Euening, when wee let our watch, and held on the same course for 10. miles till the 22. of July, the sun being South south-east, the same euening the sun being south south-west we saw a great Whale, right before our bough, that lay and slept, which by the rushing of the ship that made towards it, and the noyse of our men awaked, and swamme away, or els wee must haue sailed full vpon her, and so wee sayled eight Miles, till the Sunne was North North-west.

The thirteenth of July wee sayled South-east and by South fifteene Miles, till the sunne was South South-west, and saw land about foure Miles from vs, Then wee wound of from the Land, when the Sunne was about South South-west, and sayled twentie foure Miles till Euening, that the Sunne was North-west.

After that we sayled North-ward tenne Miles, till the fifteenth of July, at Noone, and then North North-west eight Miles till Mid-night, then wee wound about againe, and sayled East, South-east, and South-east and by South, till the twentie sixe of July, the

Sunne

Sunne being South, and had the Sunne at seauentie one Degrees and $\frac{1}{4}$.

The Sunne beeing South South-west, wee wounde about againe, and sayled North-east and by North, till the Seauen and twentie of July, the Sunne being South; being vnder 72. degrees and $\frac{1}{3}$. partes.

After that, wee sayled full North-east 16. Myles, till the 28. of July, the Sunne being East. Then we wound about againe South and by East, till the Sunne was North-west, and sayled 8. Miles. After that, South-east and by South 18. Miles, till the 19. of July at midnight.

After that, we wound about againe, East and by North, and sayled eight miles, till the 30. of July, when the Sunne was North: then we wound South south-east, with calme weather, till the 31. of July, that the Sunne was North-west, and sayled sixe Miles.

From thence wee sayled East-ward 8. Myles, till the first of August about midnight, in calme faire weather, and saw Trumpsand South-east from vs, the Sunne being North: and wee being tenne Miles from the land, and so sayled till the Sunne was East, with a litle cold gale out of the East North-east, and after that, South-east 9. Myles and a halfe, till the Sunne was North-west.

Then we wound about againe, being halfe a Mile from the land, and sayled East and by North three miles, till the 3. of August, the Sunne South-west: and then along by the land about 5. Miles.

Then we wound about againe, because there lay a Rocke or Sand, that reached about a mile and a halfe out from the land into the Sea, whereon Isbrant the Vize-admirall stroke with his Shippe: but the weather being faire and good, he got off againe. When he stroke vpon it, he was a litle before vs; and when we heard him cry out, and saw his Shippe in danger, wee in all haste wound about; & the Wind being North-east and by East, and South-east and South-east and by South, wee sayled 5 or 6. Myles along by the land, till the Sunne was South, vpon the 4. of August.

Then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be Seauentie and one degrees and $\frac{1}{4}$. At which time till noone, wee had calme weather: and hauing the Wind Southerly wee sayled East and by North, till the fifth of August, the Sunne being South-east,

the North Cape lying about two miles, East from vs, and when the Sunne was North-west, the mother and her daughters lay Southward from vs foure miles, and in that time we sailed about fourteene miles.

Then we sailed East north-east, till the 6. of August, when wee had the Sunne West north-west, and then Is-brandt the Vize-admirall, came to vs with his ship, and so bating some of our sayles, wee sayled about 10. miles.

Then we hoysed vp our sailes againe, till the Sunne was North-west, and after that halde vp againe with an East, and East-northeast wind, and sailed south and by west with a stiffe gale, till the 7. of August, that the Sunne was south-east, then their came a ship of Enckhuysen out of the white sea, and then we esteemed that wee had sailed about 8. Miles.

The Sunne being south, the North Cape lay south-west and by south from vs, about a mile and a halfe, and the mother and her daughters south-west from vs, about 3. miles, then hauing an East and by north wind we wound about, and held our course North and by east, and sailed 14. miles till the 8. of August, when the Sunne was south-west; then we wound south and by east, and so held her course till the 9. of August, that the sunne was south; and then we saw a high point of land south-east from vs, and another high point of land south-ward, about 4. miles from vs, as we gest, and so we sailed about 14. miles: and then againe we wound North-east, & by North, till the 10. of August, the sun being east, and sailed about 8. miles; after that we wound south-ward againe, till the sunne was North-west, and sailed (as we gest) 10. miles.

Then wee wound about againe, when the North Cape lay West and by south from vs about 9. Miles, the North-kyen being South and by West from vs, about 3. Miles, and sailed North north-east till the 11. of August, in very mistie weather 10. miles, till the sunne was south.

From thence wee wound about againe, with an East North-east wind, and sailed south-east and by south 8. Miles, till the sunne was south-west, vpon the 12. of August, then the North-kyen lying south west and by south from vs about 8. miles, we lay and draue at sea, in calme weather, till the 13. of August, when the sunne was south south-west, and in that time sailed about 4. miles.

Then

Then we sailed south-east and by east, about 4. Glasses, and then the Iron-hogge, with her companie (being Marchants) tooke their course south-ward, and wee sailed till the 14. of August (when the sunne was south) about 18. miles, and from thence for the most part, held one course till the 15. of August, the sunne being East, and there we cast out the lead and found 70. fadome deepe, and sailed 38. Miles till the sunne was south.

The sunne being south and the height thereof being taken, it was found to be 70. Degrees and 47. minutes, then in the night time wee cast out the lead, & found ground at 40. fadome, it being a bancke, the sunne being North-west, we cast out the lead againe and had ground at 64. fadome, and so wee went on East south east till the 16. of August, the sunne being North-east, & there the line being out, we found no ground at 80. fadome, and after that we sailed East and east, and by south, and in that time wee cast the lead often times out, and found ground at 60. and 70. Fadome either more or lesse, and so sailed 36. Miles, till the sunne was south.

Then we sailed East, and so continued till the 17. of August, the sunne being east, and cast out our lead, and found 60. Fadome deepe, clay ground, and then taking the height of the sunne, when it was south-west and by south, we found it to be 69. Degrees and 54. Minutes, and there we saw great store of Ice, all along the coast of Noua Zembla, and casting out the lead had 75. fadome soft ground, and so sayled about 24. miles.

After that we held diuers courses because of the Ice, and sayled south-east and by east, and south south-east, for the space of 18. miles, till the 18. of August, when the Sunne was East, and then wee cast out the lead againe, and found 30. fadome soft ground, and within 2. houres after that 25. fadome, red sand, with small shels: Three glasses after that we had ground at 20. fadome, red sand, with blacke shels, as before: then we saw 2. Islands, which they of Enck-huysen gaue the names of Prince Maurice and his brother, which lay from vs south-east 3. miles, being low land, and then we sailed 8. miles, till the Sunne was South.

Then we sailed East, and oftentimes casting out the lead we found 20. 19. 18. and 17. fadome deepe, good ground mixed with blacke shels, and saw the Wey-gates (the Sunne being west) which lay east north-east from vs about 5. miles, and after that we sailed about 8. miles.

Then we sailed vnder 70. Degrees, vntill we came to the Wey-gates, most part through broken Ice, and when we got to Wey-gates, we cast out our lead, and for a long time found 13. and 14. fadome, soft ground, mixed with blacke shels, not long after that wee cast out the lead and found 10. fadome deepe, the wind being North, and wee forced to hold stiffy aloofe, in regard of the great quantitie of Ice, till about midnight, then we were forced to wind North-ward, because of certaine rocks that lay on the South-side of Wey-gates, right before vs, about a mile and a halfe, hauing ten fadome deepe: then wee changed our course, and sailed West North-west for the space of 4. Glasses, after that we wound about againe East, and East and by South, and so entred into Wey-gates, and as wee went in, we cast out the lead, and found 7. fadome deepe little more or lesse, till the 19. of August, and then the sunne being South-east, we entered into the Wey-gates, in the road, the Wind being North.

The right Chanell betweene the Image point and the Samuters land was full of Ice, so that it was not well to be past through, and so we went into the road (which wee called the Trayen Bay, because we found store of Trayen-ayle there, this is a good bay for the course of the Ice, and good almost for all Windes, and we may saile so farre into it as we will, at 4. 5. & 3. fadome, good anchor-ground, on the East side it is deepe water.

The 20. of August, the height of the Sunne being taken with the Crosse-staffe, wee found that it was elevated aboue the Horizon 69. Degrees 21. minuts, when it was South-west and by South, being at the highest, or before it began to descend.

The 21. of August we went on land with in the Wey-gates with foure and fiftie men, to see the situation of the Countrey, and being 2. miles within the land, we found many Vel-werck, Trayen, and such like wares, and diuers foot-steps of men, and Deere; whereby wee perceiued that some men dwelt thereabouts, or else vsed to come thither.

And to assure vs the more thereof, wee might perceiue it by the great number of Images, which wee found there vpon the Image or Beelthooke (so called by vs) in great abundance, whereof ten dayes after we were better informed by the Samuters and the Russians, when we spake with them.

And

And when wee entered further into the Land, wee vsed all the meanes we could, to see if we could find any houses, or men, by whom wee might bee informed of the scituation of the Sea there abouts, whereof afterward wee had better intelligence by the Samuters, that tolde vs, that there are certaine men dwelling on the Wey-gates, and vpon Noua Zembla, but wee could neither finde men, houses, nor any other things, so that to haue better information, we went with some of our men further South-east into the land; towards the Sea side; and as we went, we found a path-way made with mens feete in the Mosse or Marsh-ground, about halfe knee deepe, for that going so deepe wee felt hard ground vnder our feete, which at the deepest was no higher then our shoes, and as wee went forward to the Sea Coast, wee were exceeding glad, thinking that wee had seene a passage open, where wee might get through, because we saw so little Ice there: and in the Euening entering into our ship againe, wee shewed them that newes. Meane time our Maister had sent out a boat to see if the Tartarian Sea was open, but it could not get into the Sea because of the Ice, yet they rowed to the Crosse-point, and there let the Boate lye, and went ouer the Land to the West point, and there perceiued that the Ice in the Tartarian Sea, lay full vpon the Russian Coastes, and in the mouth of Wey-gates.

The twentie three of August wee found a Lodgie, or Boate of pitzore, which was sowed together with bast or ropes, that had beene North-ward to seeke for some Sea-horses teeth, Trayen, and Geese, which they fetcht with their Boat, to lade in certaine shippes that were to come out of Russia, through Wey-gates.

Which shippes they sayd (when they spake with vs) were to saile into the Tartarian Sea, by the Riuer of Oby, to a place called Vgolita in Tartaria, there to stay all Winter, as they vsed to doe euery yeere: and told vs that it would yet bee nine or tenne Weekes ere it began to Freeze in that place, and that when it once began to freeze, it would freeze so hard, that as then men might goe ouer the Sea into Tartaria, (along vpon the Ice) which they called Mermare.

The 24. of August in the Morning betimes, we went on board of the Lodgie, to haue further information and instruction of the Sea,

on

on the East side of Wey-gates, and they gaue vs good instruction, such as you haue heard.

The 25. of August we went againe to the Lodgie, and in friendly maner spake with them, we for our parts offering them friendship; and then they gaue vs 8. fat Geese, that lay in the bottome of their Boat: we desired that one or two of them would goe with vs on board our ship, and they willingly went with vs to the number of seuen; and being in our ship they wondered much at the greatnesse, and furniture of our ship: and after they had seene and looked into it in euery place, we set Fish, Butter, and Cheese before them to eat, but they refused it, saying, that that day was a fasting day with them, but at last when they saw some of our pickled-Herrings, they eat them both heads, tayles, skin, and guts, and hauing eaten thereof, we gaue them a small ferkin of Herrings, for the which they gaue vs great thankes, knowing not what friendship they should doe vs to requite our courtesie, and wee brought them with our Pinnace into the Traen Bay.

About Noone wee hoysed vp our anchors with a West north-west wind; the course or stretching of Wey-gates, is east to the Cruis point, and then North-east to the Twist point, & somewhat more Easterly: From thence the land of Wey-gates reacheth North north-east, and North and by East, and then North, and somewhat westerly, we sayled North-east and East-ward 2. miles, by the Twist point, but then we were compelled to saile backe againe, because of the great store of Ice, and tooke our course to our road aforesaid: and sayling backe againe wee found a good place by the Crosse point to anchor in, that night.

The 26. of August in the Morning we hoysed anchor, and put out our fork-saile, and so sailed to our old road, there to stay for a more conuenient time.

The 28. 29. and 30. of August till the 31. the winde for the most part was South-west, and William Barents our Captaine, sayled to the Southside of Wey-gates, and there went on land, where wee found certaine Wilde men (called Samuters) and yet not altogether wilde, for they being 20. in number staid & spake with our men, being but 9. together, about a mile within the land, our men not thinking to find any men there (for that we had at other times beene on land in the Wey-gates, and saw none) at last it being mistie weather, they perceiued men, fiue and fiue in a company, and wee were hard by them before

Wey-gates, and saw none) at last, it being mistie weather, they perceiued men 5. and 5. in a company, and wee were hard by them before we knew it: then our Interpretor went alone towards them to speake with them; which they perceiuing, sent one towardes vs, who comming almost to our men, tooke an Arrow out of his quiuer, offering to shoote at him; wherewith our Interpretor, being without Armes, was afraide, and cryed vnto him, saying (in Russian speach;) Shoote not, we are friends: which the other hearing, cast his Bow and Arrowes to the ground, therewith giuing him to vnderstand that he was well content to speake with our man: which done, our man called to him once againe, and sayd: Wee are friendes: whereunto he made answere & sayd; then you are welcome: and saluting one the other, bended both their heades downe towardes the ground, after the Russian manner: this done, our Interpretor questioned with him, about the scituation & stretching of the Sea eastward through the Straightes of Wey-gates; whereof he gaue vs good instruction, saying: that when they should haue past a point of Land about 5. dayes sayling from thence, shewing North-eastward;) that after that, there is a great Sea (shewing towardes the South-east vpward,) saying, that hee knew it very well, for that one had been there that was sent thither by their King with certaine Souldiers, whereof he had been Captaine.

The maner of their Apparell is, like as we vse to paint Wild men, but they are not wilde; for they are of reasonable iudgement: they are apparelled in Hartes skins from the head to the feete, vnlesse it be the principallest of them, which are apparelled, whether they bee men or women, like vnto the rest, as aforesayd, vnlesse it bee on their heads, which they couer with certaine coloured Cloth lyned with Furre: the rest weare Cappes of Hartes or Buckes skinnes, the rough side outwardes, which stand close to their heades, and are very fitte. They weare long hayre, which they plaite and fold, and let it hang downe vpon their backes. They are (for the most part all) short and low of stature, with broad flat faces, small eyes, short legges, their faces standing outwards; and are very quicke to goe and leape. They trust not Strangers; for although that wee shewed them all the courtesie and friendship that wee could, yet they trusted vs not much: which we perceiued hereby, that as vpon the first of September we went againe on land to them, and that one of our men desired

to see one of their Bowes: they refused it, making a signe that they would not doe it. Hee that they called their King, had Centinels standing abroad, to see what was done in the Countrie, and what was bought and sould: At last, one of our men went neerer to one of the Centinels, to speake with him, and offered him great friendship, according to their accustomed manner, withall giuing him a Bisket; which he with great thankes tooke, and presently eate it; and while he eate it, hee still lookt diligently about him on all sides what was done.

Their Sleades stood alwayes ready with one or two Hartes in them, that runne so swiftly with one or two men in them, that our Horses are not able to follow them. One of our men shot a Musket towards the Sea, wherewith they were in so great feare, that they ranne and leapt like mad men: yet at last, they satisfied themselues, when they perceiued that it was not maliciously done to hurt them: and we told them by our Interpreter, that wee vsed our Peeces in stead of Bowes; whereat they wondered, because of the great blow and noyse that it gaue and made: and to shew them what we could doe therewith, one of our men tooke a flatte Stone about halfe a handfull broad, and set it vpon a hill a good way off from him: which they perceiuing, and thinking that wee meant some-what thereby, 50. or 60. of them gathered round about vs; and yet some-what farre off, wherewith hee that had the Peece, shotte it off, and with the Bullet smote the Stone in sunder: whereat they woondred much more then before.

After that, we tooke our leaues one of the other, with great friendship on both sides; and when we were in our Penace, we al put off our Hattes, and bowed our Heades vnto them, sounding our Trumpet: They (in their manner) saluting vs also, & then went to their Sleads againe.

And after they were gone from vs, and were some-what within the Land, one of them came ryding to the shore, to fetch a rough-heawed Image, that our men had takē off the shore, & caryed into their Boate: And when he was in our Boate, and perceiued the Image, hee made vs a signe that wee had not done well to take away that Image: Which wee beholding, gaue it to him againe: Which when he had receiued, he placed it vpon a hill right by the sea side, and tooke

ſt not with him, but ſent a Slead to fetch it from thence: and as farre as wee could perceiue, they eſteemed that Image to be their God; for that right ouer against that place in the Wey-gates, which wee called Beelthooke, wee found certaine hundreds of ſuch carued Images, all rough about the Heads, being somewhat round, and in the middle hauing a litle hill in ſtead of a Noſe; and about the Noſe two cuttes, in place of Eyes; and vnder the Noſe a cutte, in place of a Mouth. Before the Images, wee found great ſtore of Aſhes, and Bones of Hartes: whereby it is to be ſuppoſed, that there they offered vnto them.

Hauing left the Samuters, the Sunne being South-ward, William Barents our Captaine, ſpake to the Admirall to will him to ſet ſayle, that they might goe forward: but they had not ſo many words together, as was betweene them the day before; for that when the Admirall and Vize-admirall had ſpoken with him, the Admirall ſeeming to be well contented therewith, ſaid vnto him: Captaine, What thinke you were beſt for vs to doe? He made anſwere. I thinke wee ſhould doe well to ſet ſayle, and goe forward on our Voyage, that wee may accompliſh it. Whereunto the Admirall anſweared him, and ſayd. Looke well what you doe Captaine: at which time, the Sunne was North-weſt.

The 2. of September a litle before Sunne riſing, wee put foorth our Anckor to get out, for that the Winde as then blew South ſouth-weſt; it being good weather to get out, and ill weather to lie ſtill: for we lay vnder a low Bancke. The Admirall and Vize-admirall, ſeeing vs making out, began alſo to hoyſe their Anckors, and to ſet ſayle.

When wee put out our Focke-ſayle, the Sunne was Eaſt and by South: and then we ſayled to the Croſſe-poynt, and there wee caſt Anckor to ſtay for the Vize-admirals Pinnace; which with much labour and paines, in time got out of the Ice, by often caſting out of their Anckor: and in the euening ſhee got to vs: in the morning about 2. houres before Sunne riſing, we ſet ſayle, and by Sunne riſing, we got within a mile Eaſt-ward of the Twiſt-poynt, and ſayled North-ward 6. miles, till the Sunne was South. Then wee were forced to wind about, becauſe of the great quantitie of Ice, and the Miſt that then fell, at which time the Winde blew ſo vncertaine, that

that we could hold no course, but were forced continually to winde and turne about, by reason of the Ice, and the vnconstantnesse of the wind, together with the mist, so that our course was vncertaine, and we supposed that we had sailed south-ward vp towardes the Samuters countrey, and then held our course south-west, till the watchers were north-west from vs; then we came to the point of the States Island, lying East-ward about a musket shot from the land, hauing 13. Fadome deepe.

The 4. of September, we hoysed anchor, because of the Ice, and sailed betweene the firme land and the States Island, where wee lay close by the States Island at 4. and 5. fadome deepe, and made our shippe fast with a cable cast on the shoare, & there we were safe from the course of the Ice, and diuers time went on land, to get Hares whereof there were many in that Island.

The 6. of September, some of our men went on shore vpon the firme land to seeke for stones, which are a kinde of Diamont, whereof there are many also in the States Island: & while they were seeking ỹ stones, 2. of our mẽ lying together in one place, a great leane white beare came sodainly stealing out, and caught one of them fast by the necke, who not knowing what it was that tooke him by the necke, cried out and said; Who is that that pulles me so by the necke? wherewith the other that lay not farre from him; lifted vp his head to see who it was, and perceiuing it to be a monsterous beare, cryed and sayd, Oh Mate it is a Beare, and therewith presently rose vp and ran away.

The Beare at the first faling vpon the man, bit his head in sunder, and suckt out his blood, wherewith the rest of the men that were on land, being about 20. in number, ran presently thither, either to saue the man, or else to driue the beare from the dead body: and hauing charged their peeces and bent their pikes set vpon her, that still was deuouring the man, but perceiuing them to come towardes her, fiercely and cruelly ran at them, and gat another of them out from the companie whith she tare in peeces, wherewith all the rest ran away.

We perceiuing out of our ship and Pinace that our men ran to the sea-side to saue themselues, with all speed entered into our Boates, and rowed as fast as we could to the shoare to relieue our men. Where being on land, we beheld the cruell spectacle of our two dead men, that had beene so cruelly killed and torne in peeces by the Beare, wee seeing

that

that incouraged our men to goe backe againe with vs, and with peeces, curtelaxes, and halfe-pikes to set vpon the Beare, but they would not all agree thereunto: some of them saying, our men are already dead, and we shall get the Beare well enough, though wee oppose not our selues into so open danger, if wee might saue our fellowes liues, then we would make haste, but now wee neede not make such speede, but take her at an aduantage, with most securitie for our selues, for we haue to doe with a cruell fierce and rauenous beast. Whereupon three of our men went forward, the Beare still deuouring her prey, not once fearing the number of our men, and yet they were thirtie at the least: the three that went forward in that sort, were Cornelius Iacobson, Maister of William Barents shippe, William Gysen, Pilote of the Pinace, and Hans van Nufflen, William Barents Purser: and after that the sayd Maister and Pilote had shot three times, and mist, the Purser stepping somewhat further forward, and seeing the Beare to be within the length of a shot, presently leauelled his peece, and discharging it at the Beare, shot her into the head, betweene both the eyes, and yet shee held the man still fast by the necke, and lifted vp her head, with the man in her mouth, but shee beganne somewhat to stagger, wherewith the Purser and a Scotishman, drew out their courtlaxes, and stroke at her so hard, that their Courtlaxes burst, and yet she would not leaue the man, at last William Geysen went to them, and with all his might stroke the Beare vpon the snowt with his peece, at which time the Beare fell to the ground, making a great noyse, and William Geyson leaping vpon her cut her throat. The seuenth of September wee buryed the dead bodyes of our men in the States Island, and hauing fleaed the Beare, carryed her skinne to Amsterdam.

The ninth of September, wee set saile from the States Island, but the Ice came in so thicke and with such force, that wee could not get through, so that at Euening wee came backe againe to the States Island, the winde being Westerly. There the Admirale and the Pinace of Roterdam, fell on ground by certaine rockes, but gote off againe without any hurt.

The tenth of September, wee sayled againe from the States Island, towards the Weygates, and sent two Boates into the Sea, to certifie vs what store of Ice was abroad: and that Euening we came

all together into Wey-gates, and anckored by the Twist point.

The 11. of September in the Morning, we sailed againe into the Tartarian sea, but we fell into great store of Ice, so that wee sailed backe againe to the Wey-gates, & anckored by the Crosse point, and about mid-night we saw a Russian Lodgie, that sailed from the Beelt-point towardes the Samuters Land. The 13. of September, the Sunne being South, there beganne a great storme to blowe out of the South South-west, the weather being mistie, melancholly, and snowie, and the storme increasing more and more we drawe through.

The 14. of September the weather beganne to bee somewhat clearer, the winde being North-west, and the Storme blowing stiffe out of the Tartarian Sea, but at Euening it was faire weather, and then the winde blewe North-east, the same day our men went on the other side of Wey-gates, on the firme land, to take the depth of the channell, and entered into the bough behinde the Islands, where there stood a little howse made of wood, and a great fall of water into the land. The same Morning wee hoysed vp our anchor, thinking once againe to try what we could doe to further our Voyage, but our Admirall being of another minde, lay still till the fifteene of September.

The same day in the Morning, the winde drawe in from the East end of the Wey-gates, whereby wee were forced presently to hoyse anchors, and the same day sailed out from the West ende of the Wey-gates, with all our Fleete, and made home-wardes againe, and that day past by the Islands called Matsloe and Delgoy, and that Night wee sayled twelue Miles, North-west and by West, till Saterday in the Morning, and then the winde fell North-east, and it began to snow.

The 16. of September, from Morning to Euening, wee sayled West North-west 18. Miles, at 42. Fadome deepe, in the night it snowed & there blew very much winde out of the North-east: the first quarter wee had 40. Fadome deepe, but in the Morning we saw not any of our ships.

After that wee sailed all the night againe, till the 17. of September in the Morning, with two schower sailes, North-west: and by West, and West North-west 10. Miles, the same day in the second quarter we had 50. Fadome deepe, and in the Morning 38.

Fadome

Fadome deepe, sandy ground with blacke shels.

Sunday in the Morning wee had the winde North, and North North-west with a great gale, and then the Admirals Pinnace kept vs company, and sailed by vs with one saile from Morning to Euening, South South-west, and South-west and by South, for the space of 6. Miles.

Then wee saw the point of Candynaes, lying South-east from vs, and then wee had 27. Fadome deepe, redde sand with blacke shels. Sunday at night wee put out our focke sayle, and wound Northward ouer, and sayled all that night till Munday in the Morning, 7. or 8. Miles North-east, and North-east and by East.

The 18. of September in the Morning, wee lost the sight of the Pinnace that followed vs, and till Noone sought after her, but wee could not finde her, and sailed East-ward 3. Miles, and from Noone till Night, wee sailed North and by East foure Miles. And from Munday at night, till Tuesday in the Morning, North-east and by North, seuen Miles, and from Morning till Noone, North-east and by North 4. Miles: and from Noone till night, North-east 5. or 6. Miles at 55. Fadome deepe; the same Euening wee woond Southward and sailed so till Morning.

The 20. of September, wee sayled South and by West, and South South-west 7. or 8. Miles, at 80. fadome deepe, blacke slimie ground; from Morning till Noone, wee sailed with both our Marsh sailes, South-west, and by West 5. Miles, and from Noone to night, West and by South 5. Miles.

The 21. of September from night, till thursday in the morning, wee sayled one quarter West, and so till day still West 7. miles at 64. fadome deepe, oasie ground.

From Morning till noone south-west 5. Miles at 65. fadome deepe Oasie ground: at noone wee wound North-ward againe, and for three houres, sayled North-east two Myles: then we wound West-ward againe, and sayled till night, while halfe our second quarter was out, with two Schoure sayles south south-west, and southwest and by south fiue myles. After that, in the second quarter, wee wound Northward, and sayled so till Fryday in the morning.

The 22. of September, wee sayled North and by East, and North North-

North-east 4. miles, and from morning till noone, North-east 4. Myles. Then we wound West-ward againe, and sayled North-west and by West, and North-west three Miles: After that, the first quarter North-west and by West fiue miles: The second quarter, West and by North foure miles, and till Saterday in the morning, being the 23. of September, West South-west, and South-west and by West foure miles: From Saterday in the morning till euening, wee sayles with two Schoure sailes South-west and South-west and by West 7. or 8. miles, the Winde being North North-west. In the Euening we wound North-ward, and sayled till Sunday in the morning, being the 24. of September, with two Schoure sayles, very neare East, with a stiffe North North-west Wind 8. miles; and from morning till noone East and by South three miles, with a North Winde: Then we wound West-ward, and till euening sayled West South-west three miles; and all that night, till Monday in the morning: The 25. of September, West and by South sixe miles, the Winde being North. In the morning the Winde fell North-east, and we sailed from morning till euening West, and West ℄ by North 10. miles hauing 63. Fadome deepe sandy ground.

From Euening till Tuesday in the Morning, being the 26. of September, we sailed West 10. Miles, and then in the Morning wee were hard by the land, about 3. Miles East-ward from Kildwin, and then we wound off from the land, and so held off for 3. houres together, after that we wound towards the land againe, and thought to goe into Kilduin, but we were too low, so that after-noone we wound off from the land againe, and till Euening sailed East North-east 5. Miles. and from Euening til two houres before Wednesday in the Morning, being the 27. of September, we sailed East 6. Miles, then we wound West-ward, and till Euening sailed West and by North 8. Miles, and in the Euening came againe before Kilduin, then wee wound farre off from the land, and sailed 2. quarters North-east and by East, and East North-east 6. Miles, and about Friday in the Morning, being the 28. of September wee wound about againe, and sayled with diuers variable Windes, sometimes one way, then another way till Euening, then wee gest that Kilduin lay West from vs foure Miles, and at that time wee had an East North-east Winde,

and

and sayled North North-West, and North-West and by North, till Saterday in the Morning 12. or 13. Miles.

The nine and twenteeth of September in the Morning, wee sayled North-West, and by West foure Miles, and all that day till Euening it was faire, still, pleasant, and Sunne-shine Weather. In the Euening wee went West South-West, and then wee were about sixe Miles from the land, and sayled till Sunday in the Morning, beeing the 30. of September, North North-West eight Miles, then wee wound towardes the Land, and the same day in the Euening entered into Ward-house, and there wee stayed till the tenth of October. And that day wee set sayle out of Ward-house, and vpon the eighteene of Nouember, wee arriues in the Maes.

The course or Miles from Ward-house into Holland, I haue not here set downe, as being needlesse, because it is a continuall Voiage knowne to most men.

The end of the second Voyage.

The third Voyage Northward to the Kingdomes of *Cathaia*, and *China*, in Anno 1596.

AFTER that the seuen Shippes (as I saide before) were returned backe againe from their North Voiage, with lesse benefit then was expected, the Generall States of the vnited Prouinces consulted together, to send certaine ships thither againe, a third time, to see if they might bring the sayd Voyage to a good end, if it were possible to bee done: but after much consultation had, they could not agree thereon; yet they were content to cause a Proclamation to be made, that if any either Townes or Marchants, were disposed to venture to make further search that way, at their owne charges, if the Voyage were accomplished, and that thereby it might bee made apparant, that the sayd passage was to be sayled, they were content to giue them a good reward, in the Countryes behalfe, naming a certaine summe of money. Whereupon in the beginning of this yeare, there was two ships rigged, and set foorth by the Towne of Amsterdam, to sayle that Voyage, the men therein being taken vp vpon two conditions: viz. What they should haue if the Voyage were not accomplished, and what they should haue if they got through, and brought the Voiage to an end, promising them a good reward if they could effect it, thereby to incourage the men, taking vp as many vnmarryed men as they could, that they might not bee disswaded by meanes of their wiues and children, to leaue off the Voyage. Vpon these conditions, those two shippes were ready to set saile in the beginning of May.

In

In the one, Iacob Heemskerke Hendrickson, was Master and Factor for the Wares and Marchandises; and William Barents chiefe Pilote. In the other Iohn Cornelison Rijp, was both Master and Factor for the goods that the Marchants had laden in her.

The 5. of May all the men in both the shippes were mustered, and vpon the tenth of May they sayled from Amsterdam, and the 13. of May got to the Vlie. The sixteenth wee set saile out of the Vlie, but the tyde being all most spent, and the winde North-east, we were compelled to put in againe; at which time, Iohn Cornelisons ship fell on ground, but got off againe, and wee anchored at the East ende of the Vlie. The 18. of May wee put out of the Vlie againe, with a North-east winde, and sayled North North-west. The 22. of May wee saw the Illands of Hitland, and Feyeril-land, the winde beeing North-east. The 24. of May, wee had a good winde, and sayled North-east, till the 29. of May: then the Winde was against vs, and blewe North-east in our Top-sayle. The 30. of May we had a good Winde, and sailed North-east, and we tooke the heigth of the sunne with our Crosse-staffe, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 47. Degrees and 42. Minutes, his declination was 21. Degrees and 42. Minutes. so that the height of the Pole was 69. Degrees and twentie foure Minutes.

The first of June wee had no night, and the second of June wee had the Winde contrary, but vpon the fourth of June, wee had a good winde, out of the West North-west, and sayled North-east.

And when the Sunne was about South South-east, wee saw a strange sight in the Element: for on each side of the Sunne there was another Sunne, and two Raine-bowes that past cleane through the three Sunnes, and then two Raine-bowes more, the one compassing round about the Sunnes, and the other crosse through the great rundle; the great rundle standing with the vttermost point, eleuated aboue the Horizon 28. Degrees: at Noone the Sunne beeing at the highest, the height thereof was measured, and wee found by the Astrolabium, that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 48. Degrees, and 43. Minutes, his declination was 22. Degrees and 17. Minutes, the which beeing added to 48. Degrees 43. Minutes, it was found that wee were vnder 71. Degrees of the height of the Pole.

Iohn Cornelis shippe held aloofe from vs, and would not keepe with vs, but wee made towardes him, and sayled North-east, hating a point of our Compasse, for wee thought that wee were too farre West-ward, as after it appeared, otherwise wee should haue held our course North-east. And in the Euening when wee were together, wee tolde him that wee were best to keepe more Easterly, because wee were too farre West-ward, but his Pilote made answere, that they desired not to goe into the Straights of Weygates. There course was North-east and by North, and wee were about 60. Miles to Sea-warde in from the Land, and were to sayle North-east, when wee had the North Cape in sight, and therefore wee should rather haue sailed East North-east, and not North North-east, because wee were so farre West-ward, to put our selues in our right course againe: and there wee tolde them, that wee should rather haue sayled East-ward, at the least for certaine Miles, vntill wee had gotten into our right course againe, which by meanes of the contrary Winde wee had lost; as also because it was North-east: but whatsoeuer wee saydе, and sought to councell them for the best, they would holde no course but North North-east, for they alleaged, that if wee went any more Easterly, that then wee should enter into the Wey-gates, but wee being not able to perswade them, altered our course one point of the Compasse, to meete them, and sayled North-east and by North, and should otherwise haue sayled north-east, and somewhat more East.

The fifth of June wee sawe the first Ice, which wee wondered at, at the first, thinking that it had beene white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a sudsaine beganne to cry out with a loude voyce, and sayd; that hee sawe white Swans: which wee that were vnder Hatches hearing, presently came vp, and perceiued that it was Ice, that came driuing from the great heape, showing like Swannes, it being then about Euening, at mid-night, wee sailed through it, and the Sunne was about a Degree eleuated aboue the Horizon in the North.

The sixth of June, about foure of the Clocke in the afternoone, wee entred againe into the Ice, which was so strong that wee could not passe through it, and sayled South-west, and by West, till eight Glasses were runne out, after that wee kept on our course North,

North-

North-east, and sayled along by the Ice.

The seuenth of June wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon thirtie eight Degrees and thirtie eight Minutes, his declination beeing twentie two Degrees thirtie eight Minutes; which beeing taken from thirtie eight Degrees thirtie eight Minutes, wee found the Pole to bee seuentie foure Degrees; there wee found so great store of Ice, that it was admirable: and wee sayled along through it, as if wee had past betweene two Lands. The water being as greene as grasse, and wee supposed that we were not farre from Greene-land, and the longer wee sayled the more and thicker Ice we found.

The eight of June, wee came to so great a heape of Ice, that wee could not saile through it, because it was so thicke, and therefore wee wound about South-west and by West, till two Glasses were runne out, and after that three Glasses more South South-west, and then South three Glasses, to sayle to the Island that wee saw, as also to shunne the Ice.

The ninth of June wee found the Islande, that lay vnder 74. Degrees and 30. Minutes, and as wee gest, it was about fiue miles long.

The tenth of June wee put out our Boate, and therewith eight of our men went on Land, and as wee past by Iohn Cornelisons shippe, eight of his men also, came into our Boate, whereof one was the Pilote. Then William Barents asked him, whether wee were not too much West-ward, but hee would not acknowledge it: whereupon there passed many words betweene them, for William Barents sayde hee would proue it to bee so, as in trueth it was.

The eleuenth of June going on Land, wee found great store of Sea-Mewes Egges vpon the shoare, and in that Island, wee were in great danger of our liues: for that going vp a great Hill of Snowe, when we should come downe againe, wee thought wee should all haue broken our neckes, it was so slipperie, but wee sate vpon the Snowe, and slidde downe, which was very dangerous for vs, to breake both our armes and legges, for that at the foote of the Hill there was many Rockes, which wee were likely to haue fallen vpon, yet by Gods help wee got safely downe againe.

Meane time William Barents sate in the Boate, and sawe vs slide downe, and was in greater feare then wee, to behold vs in that danger. In the sayd Island wee found the varying of our Compasse, which was 13. Degrees, so that it differed a whole point at the least: after that wee rowed aboard Iohn Cornelisons shippe, and there wee eate our Eggs.

The 12. of June in the morning, wee saw a white Beare, which wee rowed after with our Boate, thinking to cast a Roape about her necke; but when we were neere her, shee was so great, that wee durst not doe it, but rowed backe againe to our Shippe to fetch more men and our Armes, and so made to her againe with Muskets, Hargubushes, Halbertes, and Hatchets. Iohn Cornelysons men comming also with their Boate to helpe vs: and so beeing well furnished of Men and Weapons, wee rowed with both our Boates vnto the Beare, and fought with her while foure Glasses were runne out, for our Weapons could doe her litle hurt: and amongst the rest of the blowes that wee gaue her, one of our men stroke her into the backe with an Axe, which stucke fast in her backe, and yet she swomme away with it; but wee rowed after her, and at last wee cut her head in sunder with an Axe, wherewith she dyed: and then wee brought her into Iohn Cornelysons Shippe, where wee fleaed her, and found her Skinne to bee twelue foote long: which done, wee eate some of her flesh; but wee brookt it not well. This Island wee called the Beare-Island.

The 13. of June, we left the Island, and sayled North, and somewhat Easterly, the Winde being West and South-west, and made good way: so that when the Sunne was North, wee gest that wee had sayled 16. miles North-ward from that Island.

The 14. of June, when the Sunne was North, wee cast out our Lead 113. Fadome deepe, but found no ground, and so sayled forward till the 15. of June, when the Sunne was South-east, with mistie and drifling weather, and sayled North and North and by East: about Euening it cleared vp, and then wee saw a great thing driuing in the Sea, which wee thought had been a Shippe: but passing along by it, wee perceiued it to be a dead Whale, that stouncke monsterously; and on it there sate a great number of Sea-meawes: At that time, we had sayled 20. miles.

The

The 16. of June, with the like speede wee sayled North and by East, with mistie weather; and as we sayled, wee heard the Ice before wee saw it: but after, when it cleared vp, wee saw it, and then wound off from it, when as wee gueſt wee had sayled 30. miles.

The 17. and 18. of June, wee saw great store of Ice, and sayled along by it, vntill wee came to the poynt, which we could not reach, for that the Winde was South-east, which was right against vs, and the poynt of Ice lay South-ward from vs: yet we laueared a great while to get beyond it, but we could not do it.

The 19. of June we saw Land againe, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 33. degrees and 37. minutes: her declination being 23. degrees and 26. minutes; which taken from the sayd 33. degrees and 37. minutes, we found that we were vnder 80. degrees and 11. minutes: which was the height of the Pole there.

This Land was very great, and we sayled West-ward along by it, till wee were vnder 79. degrees and a halfe, where we found a good road, and could not get neere to the Land, because the Winde blew North-east, which was right off from the Land: the Bay reacht right North and South, into the Sea.

The 21. of June we cast out our Anchor, at 18. Fadome before the Land; and then wee, and Iohn Cornelysons men, rowed on the West side of the Land, and there fetcht Balast: and when wee got on Board againe with our Balast, wee saw a white Beare that swamme towardes our Shippe; whereupon we left off our worke, and entering into the Boate with Iohn Cornelisons men, rowed after her, and crossing her in the way, droue her from the Land, where-with shee swamme further into the Sea, and wee followed her; and for that our Boate could not make good way after her, we manned out our Scute also, the better to follow her: but shee swamme a mile into the Sea; yet wee followed her with the most part of all our men of both shippes in three Boates, and stroke often times at her, cutting and heawing her, so that all our Armes were most broken in peeces. During our fight with her, shee stroke her Clowes so hard in our Boate, that the signes thereof were seene in it; but as hap was, it was in the forehead of our Boate: for if it had been in the middle thereof, shee had (peradventure) ouer-throwne it, they haue such force in their Clawes:

At

At last, after we had fought long with her, and made her wearie with our three Boates that kept about her, wee ouercame her, and killed her: which done, we brought her into our shippe, and fleaed her: her skinne being 13. foote long.

After that, we rowed with our Scute, about a mile inward to the Land, where there was a good Hauen, and good Anchor ground, on the East-side being sandie, there wee cast out our Leade, and found 16. Fadome deepe, and after that 10. and 12. Fadom, and rowing further, we found that on the East-side there was two Ilands, that reached East-ward into the Sea: on the West-side also there was a great Creeke or Riuer, which shewed also like an Iland. Then we rowed to the Iland that lay in the middle, and there we found many red Geese-Egges, which we saw sitting vpon their Nests, and driue them from them, and they flying away, cryed, red, red, red: and as they sate wee killed one Goose dead with a stone, which we drest and eate, and at least 60. Egges, that we tooke with vs aboard the shippe, and vpon the 22. of June, wee went aboard our shippe againe.

Those Geese were of a perfit red colour, such as come into Holland about Weiringen, and euery yeere are there taken in aboundance, but till this time it was neuer knowne where they hatcht their Egges, so that some men haue taken vpon them to write, that they sit vpon trees in Scotland, that hang ouer the Water, and such Egges as fall from them downe into the Water, become yong Geese, and swimme there out of the Water; but those that fall vpon the Land burst in sunder, and are lost: but this is now found to be contrary, and it is not to bee wondered at, that no man could tell where they breed their Egges, for that no man that euer we knew, had euer beene vnder 80. degrees: nor that Land vnder 80. Degrees, was neuer set downe in any Card, much lesse the red Geese that breed therein.

Red Geese breed their yong Geese, vnder 80. Degrees in Green-land.

Note.

It is here also to be noted, that although that in this land which we esteeme to be Greene-land, lying vnder 80. Degrees, and more, there groweth leaues and grasse, and that there are such beasts therein as eat grasse, as Harts, Buckes and such like Beastes as liue thereon, yet in Noua Zembla, vnder 76. Degrees, there groweth neither leaues nor grasse, nor any beasts that eate grasse or leaues, liue therein; but such beasts as eate flesh, as Beares and Foxes: and yet this Land lyeth full 4. Degrees from the North-pole, as Greene-land aforesaid doth.

The

The 23. of June we hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled North-west-ward into the sea; but could get no further, by reason of the Ice; and so wee came to the same place againe where wee had laine, and cast Anchor at 18. Fadome: and at Euening being at Anchor, the Sunne being North-east, and somewhat more East-warde, wee tooke the height thereof, and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 13. degrees and 10. minutes; his declination being 23. degrees and 28. minutes: which substracted from the height aforesaid, resteth 10. degrees and 18. minutes, which being substracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole there was 79. degrees and 42. minutes.

After that, wee hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the West side of the Land, and then our men went on Land, to see how much the needle of the Compasse varyed: Meane time, there came a great white Beare swimming towardes the Shippe, and would haue climbed vp into it, if we had not made a noyse; and with that we shot at her with a Peece, but she left the Shippe, and swam to the Land, where our men were: which wee perceiuing, sayled with our Shippe towardes the Land, and gaue a great shoute; wherewith our men thought that wee had fallen on a Rocke with our Shippe, which made them much abashed; and therewith the beare also being afraide, swam off againe from the Land, and left our men, which made vs gladde: for our men had no Weapons about them.

Touching the varying of the Compasse, for the which cause our men went on Land, to try the certaintie thereof: it was found to differ 16. degrees.

The 24. of June we had a South-west Winde, and could not get aboue the Island, and therefore wee sayled backe againe, and found a Hauen that lay foure Myles from the other Hauen, on the West side of the great Hauen, and there cast Anchor at twelue Fadome deepe: there wee rowed a great way in, and went on Land; and there wee founde two Sea-horses Teeth that waighed sixe pound: Wee also found many small Teeth, and so rowed on board againe.

The 25. of June wee hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the Land, and went South, and South South-west, with a

North North-east Winde, vnder 79. Degrees. There we found a great Creeke or Riuer, whereinto we sailed ten miles at the least, holding our course South-ward; but we perceiued that there wee could not get through: there wee cast out our Leade, and for the most part found ten fadome deepe, but wee were constrained to lauere out againe, for the Winde was Northerly, and almost full North, and wee perceaued that it reached to the firme Land, which we supposed to be Low-land, for that wee could not see it any thing farre, and therefore wee sailed so neere vnto it, till that wee might see it, and then we were forced to lauere, and vpon the 27. of June we got out againe.

The twenty eight of June, wee gate beyonde the point that lay on the west-side, where there was so great a number of Birds, that they flew against our sailes, and we sailed 10. Miles South-ward, and after that West, to shun the Ice.

The twenty nine of June wee sayled South-East and somewhat more Easterly, along by the land, till wee were vnder 76. degrees and 50. Minutes, for wee were forced to put off from the land, because of the Ice.

The thirteeth of June, we sayled South, and somewhat east, and then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated aboue the Horizon 38. Degrees and 20. Minutes, his declination was 23. Degrees and 20. Minutes, which being taken from the former height, it was found that wee were vnder 75. Degrees.

The first of July, wee saw the Beare-Island againe, and then Iohn Cornelison and his Officers came aboard our ship, to speake with vs about altering of our course, but wee being of a contrary opinion, it was agreed that wee should follow on our course, and hee his: which was, that hee (according to his desire) should saile vnto 80. Degrees againe: for hee was of opinion, that there hee should finde a passage through, on the East-side of the Land, that lay vnder 80. Degrees. And vpon that agreement wee left each other, they sayling North-ward, and wee South-ward, because of the Ice, the Winde being East South-east.

The second of July, wee sailed East-ward, and were vnder 74. Degrees, hauing the Winde North North-West, and then wee

wound

wound ouer another Bough, with an East North-east Winde, and sayled North-ward. In the Euening the Sunne beeing about North-West, and by North, wee wound about againe, (because of the Ice) with an East Winde, and sailed South South-east, and about East South-east, and then we wound about againe (because of the Ice) and the Sunne being South south-West, we wound about againe, and sailed North-east.

The third of July, wee were vnder 74. Degrees, hauing a South-east and by East Wind, and sailed north-east and by north: after that we wound about againe with a South Wind, and sayled East South-east, till the sunne was North-West, then the Wind began to be somewhat larger.

The fourth of July, wee sailed East and by North, and found no Ice, which wee wondered at, because wee sailed so high, but when the Sunne was almost South, we were forced to winde about againe, by reason of the Ice, and sailed West-ward, with a North Wind, after that the Sunne beeing North, wee sailed East South-east, with a North-east Wind.

The fifth of July, wee sailed North North-east, till the Sunne was South: then wee wound about, and went East South-east, with a North-east Winde. Then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to bee eleuated aboue the Horizon 39. Degrees 27. Minutes, his declination beeing 22. Degrees and 53. Minutes, which taken from the high aforesaid, we found that wee were vnder the height of the Poole seuentie three Degrees and 20. Minutes.

The seuenth of July, wee cast out our whole Lead-lyne, but found no ground, and sayled East and by South, the Wind being North-east and by East, and were vnder 72. Degrees and 12. Minutes.

The eight of July, we had a good North-west Wind, and sailed East and by North, with an indifferent cold gale of Wind, and got vnder 72. Degrees and 15. Minutes. The ninth of July, we went East and by North, the Wind being West. The tenth of July, the Sunne being South south-West, we cast out our Lead, and had ground at 160. Fadome, the Winde being North-east, and by North, and we sailed East and by South, vnder 72. Degrees.

The 11. of July, we found 70. Fadome deepe, and saw no Ice, then we gest that we were right South, and North from Dandinaes, that is the East-point of the White-Sea, that lay Southward from vs, and had sandy ground, and the Bancke stretched North-ward into the Sea, so that wee were out of doubt that we were vpon the Bancke of the White Sea, for wee had found no sandy ground all the Coast along, but onely that Bancke. Then the winde being East and by South, we sayled South, and South and by East, vnder 72. Degrees, and after that, we had a South South-East Winde, and sayled North-East to get ouer the Bancke.

In the Morning wee drawe forward with a calme, and found that wee were vnder 72. Degrees, and then againe wee had an East South-east Winde, the Sunne beeing about South-west, and sayled North-east, and casting out our Lead found 150. Fadome deepe clay ground; and then we were ouer the Bancke, which was very narrow, for wee sailed but 14. Glasses, and gate ouer it, when the sunne was about North North-east.

The twelfth of July, wee sayled North and by East, the Winde beeing East, and at Euening the Sunne being North North-east, we wound about againe, hauing the Winde North North-east, and sayled East and by South, till our first quarter was out.

The thirteenth of July, wee sayled East, with a North North-east Winde: then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to bee eleuated aboue the Horizon 54. Degrees and 38. Minutes, his declination was 21. Degrees and 54. Minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was found to be 73. Degrees, and then againe wee found Ice, but not very much, and wee were of opinion that wee were by Willoughbies-land.

The fourteenth of July wee sayled North-east, the Winde being North North-west, and in that sort sayled about a dinner time, along through the Ice, and in the middle thereof wee cast out our leade, and had 90. Fadome deepe, in the next quarter wee cast out the Leade againe, and had 100. Fadome deepe, and we sayled so farre into the Ice, that wee could goe no further: for wee

could

could see no place where it opened, but were forced (with great la-bour and paine) to lauere out of it againe, the Winde blowing West, and wee were then vnder seuentie foure Degrees and tenne Minutes.

The fifteenth of July wee drawe through the middle of the Ice with a calme, and casting out our Leade had 100. Fadome deepe, at which time the Winde being East, wee sayled West.

The sixteenth of July wee got out of the Ice, and sawe a great Beare lying vpon it, that leaped into the Water when shee saw vs: Wee made towards her with our shippe, which shee perceiuing gotte vp vpon the Ice againe, wherewith wee shot once at her.

Then we sailed East South-east, and saw no Ice, gessing that wee were not farre from Noua Zembla, because wee saw the Beare there vpon the Ice, at which time we cast out the Lead and found 100. fadome deepe.

The seuenteenth of July, wee tooke the height of the sunne, and it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 37. Degrees, and 55. Minutes, his declination was 21. Degrees and 15. Minutes, which taken from the height aforesaid. the heigh of the Pole was 74. Degrees and 40. Minutes: and when the Sunne was in the South, wee saw the Land of Noua Zembla, which was about Lomsbay: I was the first that espied it. Then wee altered our course, and sayled North-east and by North, and hoysed vp all our sailes, except the Fore-saile and the Lesien.

The eighteenth of July wee saw the Land againe, beeing vnder 75. Degrees, and sayled North-east and by North, with an North-west Winde, and wee gate aboue the point of the Admirals Island, and sailed East North-east, with a West Winde, the Land reaching North-east, and by North.

The ninteenth of July wee came to the Crosse-Island, and could then get no further, by reason of the Ice, for there the Ice lay still close vpon the Land, at which time the Winde was West, and blewe right vpon the Land, and it lay vnder 76. Degrees and 20. Minutes. There stood 2. Crosses vpon the Land, wherefore it had the Name.

The twenteeth of July wee anchored vnder the Island, for wee

wee could get no further for the Ice. There wee put out our Boate, and with eight men rowed on Land, and went to one of the Crosses, where we rested vs awhile, to goe to the next Crosse, but beeing in the way we saw two Beares by the other Crosse, at which time wee had no weapons at all about vs. The Beares rose vp vpon their hinder feete to see vs (for they smell further then they see) and for that they smelt vs: therefore they rose vpright, and came towards vs, wherewith we were not a little abashed, in such sort that wee had little lust to laugh, and in all haste went to our Boate againe, still looking behinde vs, to see if they followed vs, thinking to get into the Boate, and so put off from the land, but the Master stayed vs, saying, hee that first beginnes to runne away, I will thrust this Hake-staffe (which hee then held in his hand) into his Ribs, for it is better for vs (sayd hee) to stay altogether, and see if we can make them afraid with whooping and hallowing, and so wee went softly towardes the Boate, and gote away glad that wee had escaped there clawes, and that wee had the leysure to tell our fellowes thereof.

The one and twenteeth of July, wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon thirtie fiue Degrees and fifteene Minutes, his declination was one and twentie Degrees, which being taken from the height aforesaide, there rested fourteene Degrees, which substracted from ninetie Degrees, then the heigh of the Pole was found to bee seuentie sixe Degrees and fifteene Minutes, then wee found the variation of the Compasse to be iust twentie sixe Degrees. The same day two of our men went againe to the Crosse, and found no Beares to trouble vs, and wee followed them with our Armes, fearing least wee might meet any by chance, and when we came to the second Crosse, wee found the foote-steps of 2. Beares, and saw how long they had followed vs, which was an hundreth foote-steps at the least, that way that wee had beene the day before.

The two and twentie of July, being Sunday, wee set vp another Crosse, and made our Marke thereon: and lay there before the Crosse Iland, till the fourth of August, meane time we washt and whited our linnen on the shoare.

The thirtie of July, the Sunne being North, there came a

Beare

Beare so neere to our shippe, that wee might hit her with a stone, and wee shot her into the foote with a Peece, wherewith shee ranne halting away.

The one and thirteeth of July, the Sunne being East Noyth-east, seuen of our men killed a beare, and fleaed her, and cast her body into the Sea. The same day at Noone (by our Instrument) wee found the variation of the nedle of the Compasse to be 17. Degrees.

The first of August, wee saw a white Beare, but shee ranne away from vs.

The fourth of August wee got out of the Ice, to the other side of the Island, and anchoyed there: where, with great labour and much paine, wee fetched a Boate full of stones from the land.

The fifth of August wee set saile againe towardes Ice-point, with an East Wind, and sailed South south-east, and then Noyth Noyth-east, and saw no Ice by the land, by the which wee lauered.

The sixth of August, wee gate about the point of Nassawe, and sayled foyward East, and East and by South, along by the land.

The seuenth of August, wee had a West South-west Wind, and sayled along by the Land, South-east, and South-east and by East, and sawe but a little Ice, and then past by the Trust-point, which we had much longed foy: at Euening we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather, so that wee were foyced to make our ship fast to a peece of Ice, that was at least 36. fadome deepe, vnder the water, and moye then 16. fadome aboue the water: which in all was 52. fadome thick, foy it lay fast vpon ground the which was 36. fadome deepe. The eight of August in the Moyning, wee had an East wind, with mistie Weather.

The 9. of August, lying still fast to the great peece of Ice, it snowed hard, & it was misty weather, and when the sunne was south, we went vpon the Hatches (foy we alwayes held watch) where as the Master walked along the ship, he heard a beast snuffe with his nose, and looking ouer-boyd, he saw a great beare hard by the ship, where with he cryed out, a Beare, a beare; and with that all our men came vp from vnder hatches, and saw a great beare hard by our boat, seeking to get into it, but we giuing a great shoute shee was afrayd, and

swamme

swamme away, but presently came backe againe, and went behinde a great peece of Ice, whereunto wee had made our Shippe fast, and climbed vpon it, and bouldly came towardes our Shippe to enter into it: but wee had tozne our Scute sayle in the Shippe, and lay with foure Peeces before at the Bootesprit, and shotte her into the body: and with that, shee ranne away; but it snowed so fast, that wee could not see whither shee went: but wee guest that shee lay behinde a high Hoouell; whereof there was many vpon the peece of Ice.

The Tenth of August, being Saterday, the Ice began mightily to breake, and then wee first perceiued that the great peece of Ice wherevnto wee had made our Shippe fast, lay on the ground; for the rest of the Ice drawe along by it, wherewith wee were in great feare that wee should be compassed about with the Ice, and therefore wee vsed all the diligence and meanes that wee could, to get from thence, for wee were in great doubt: and being vnder sayle, wee sayled vpon the Ice, because it was all broken vnder vs, and got to an other peece of Ice; whereunto wee made our Shippe fast againe with our Sheate Anchor, which wee made fast vpon it; and there wee lay till Euening: and when wee had supped, in the first quarter, the sayd peece of Ice began on a sodaine to burst and rende in peeces, so fearefully that it was admirable; for with one great cracke it burst into foure hundred peeces at the least: wee lying fast to it, weied our Cable, & got off from it, vnder the water it was ten Fadome deepe, and lay vpon the ground, and two Fadome aboue the Water; and it made a fearefull noyse both vnder and aboue the Water when it burst, and spread it selfe abroad on all sides.

And being with great feare, gotten from that peece of Ice, wee came to an other peece, that was sixe Fadome deepe vnder the Water: to the which we made a Rope fast on both sides.

Then wee saw an other great peece of Ice, not farre from vs, lying fast in the Sea, that was as sharpe aboue, as it had been a Tower; whereunto wee rowed: and casting out our Lead, wee found that it lay 20. Fadome deepe, fast on the ground vnder the Water, and 12. Fadome aboue the Water.

The

The 11 of August being sunday, wée rowed to another péece of Ice, & cast out our lead, and found that it lay 18 fadom déepe fast to the ground vnder the water, and 10 fadome aboue the water. The 12 of August, we sailed néere vnder the land, ẏ better to shun ẏ Ice, for ẏ the great flakes that draue in the sea, were many fadome déepe vnder the water, and we were better defended from them being at 4. and 5 fadome water, and there ran a great current of water from the hill. There we made our ship fast againe to a péece of Ice, and called that point, the small Ice point.

The 13 of August in the morning, there came a Beare from the east point of the land, close to our ship, and one of our men with a péece, shot at her, and brake one of her legs, but she crept vp the hill with her thrée feet, and wée following her, killed her, and hauing flead her, brought the skinne aboard the ship. From thence we set saile, with a little gale of winde, and were forced to lauere, but after, that it began to blow more out of the South and South-South-East.

The 15 of August, we came to the Iland of Orange, where we were inclosed with the Ice, hard by a great péece of Ice where we were in great danger to lose our ship. but with great labour and much paine we got to the Iland, the winde being South-East, whereby we were constrained to turne our ship, and while we were busied thereabouts, and made much noise, a Beare that lay there and slept, awaked, and came towards vs to the ship, so that we were forced to leaue our worke about turning of the ship, and to defend our selues against the Beare, and shot her into the body, wherewith she ran away to the other side of the Iland, and swim into the water, and got vp vpon a péece of Ice, where shée lay still, but we comming after her to the péece of Ice where shée lay, when she saw vs, she leapt into the water, and swam to the land. but we got betwéene her and the land, and stroke her on the head with a hatchet, but as often as we stroke at her with the hatchet, she duckt vnder the water, whereby we had much to do before we could kill her: after she was dead we flead her on the land, and toke the skin on board with vs, and after that, turned our ship to a great péece of Ice, and made it fast thereunto.

The 16 of August, ten of our men entring into one boat, rowed to the firme land of Noua Zembla, and drew the boate vp

vpon the Ice, which done, we went vp a high hill, to see the situation of the land, and found that it reached South East, & South South East, and then againe South, which we disliked, for that it lay so much Southward: but when we saw open water, South East, and East South East, we were much comforted againe, thinking ỹ we had won our voyage, & knew not how we should get some inough on boord, to certifie VVilliam Barents thereof.

The 18. of August we made preparation to set saile, but it was all in vaine: for we had almost lost our sheat Anchor, and two new ropes, and with much lost labour got to the place againe from whence we came: for the streame ran with a mighty currant, and the Ice drave very strongly vpon the cables, along by the shippe, so that we were in feare that we should lose all the cable that was without the ship, which was 200. fadome at the least, but God prouided well for vs, so that in the end, wee got to the place againe from whence we put out.

The 19. of August it was indifferent good weather, the winde blowing South west, the Ice still driuing, and we set saile with an indifferent gale of wind, and past by ỹ point of Desire, whereby we were once againe in good hope, and when we had gotten aboue the point, we sailed South-east into the sea-ward, 4. miles, but then againe we entred into more Ice, whereby we were constrained to turn back againe, & sailed North-west vntil we came to ỹ land againe, which reacheth frō the point of Desire, to the head point, south and by west 6. miles: from the head point to Flushingers head, it reacheth South west, which are 3. miles one from the other: from the Flushingars head, it reacheth into the sea, east south east, and from Flushingers head to the point of the Iland, it reacheth south west, and by south, and South west 3. miles: & from the Iland point, to the point of the Ice hauen, the land reacheth West South west 4. miles: from the Ice hauens point to the fall of water, or the streame bay, and the Low land it reacheth West & by South, and East and by North 7. miles: from thence the land reacheth East and West.

The 21 of August we sailed a great way into the Ice hauen, and that night ankored therein: next day the streame going extreame hard Eastward, we haled out againe from thence, and sailed againe to the Iland point, but for that it was misty weather,

comming to a pece of Ice, we made the ship fast thereunto, because the winde began to blow hard South weast and South South West. There we went vp vpon the Ice, and wondred much thereat, it was such manner of Ice: For on the top it was ful of earth, and there we found aboue 40. Egges, and it was not like other Ice, for it was of a perfect azure coloure, like to the skies, whereby there grew great contentiõ in words amongst our men, some saying that it was Ice, others that it was frozen land: for it lay vnreasonable high aboue the water, it was at least 18. fadome vnder the water close to the ground, and 10. fadome aboue the water. there we stayed all that storme, the wind being Southwest and by West.

The 23. of August we sailed againe from the Ice, south eastward into the sea, but entred presently into it againe, & wound about to the Ice hauen. The next day it blew hard North Northwest, and the Ice came mightily driuing in, whereby we were in a manner compassed about therewith, and withall the winde began more and more to rise, and the Ice still draue harder and harder, so that the pin of the rother and the rother were shorne in peces and our boate was shorne in peces betweene the ship and the Ice, we expecting nothing else, but that the ship also would be prest and crusht in peces with the Ice.

The 25. of August the weather began to be better, and we toke great paines, and bestowed much labour to get the Ice, wherewith we were so inclosed, to go from vs, but what meanes soeuer we vsed it was all in vaine, but when the sun was South-west, the Ice began to driue out againe with the streame, & we thought to saile southward about Noua Zembla, to the straites of Vergates, for that seeing we could there find no passage. We hauing past Noua Zembla, were of opinion that our labour was all in vaine, and that we could not get through, and so agreed to go that way home againe; but comming to the streame Bay, we were forced to go back againe, because of the Ice which lay so fast thereabouts, and the same night also it froze, that we could hardly get through there, with the little wind that we had, the winde then being North.

The 26. of August there blew a reasonable gale of winde. at which time we determined to saile back to the point of Desire, &

so home againe, seeing ỹ we could not get through ỹ Wergats, although we vsed al the meanes & industry we could to get forward, but whẽ we had past by ỹ Ice hauen, ỹ Ice began to driue wᵭ such force, ỹ we were inclosed round about therwith, & yet we sought al the meanes we could to get out, but it was all in vaine: and at that time we had like to haue lost three men that were vpon the Ice to make way for the ship, if the Ice had held ỹ course it went, but as we draue back againe, & that the Ice also wheron our men stood, in like sort draue, they being nimble, as ỹ ship draue by thẽ, one of them caught hould of the beake head, another vpon the shroudes, and the third vpon the great brase that hung out behind, and so by great aduenture by the hold that they toke, they got safe into the shippe againe, for which they thanked GOD with all their hearts: for it was much liklier that they should rather haue bene carried away with the Ice, but God, by the nimblenes of their hands, deliuered them out of that danger which was a pittifull thing to behold, although it fell out for the best, for if they had not bene nimble, they had surely dyed for it.

The same day in the euening, we got to the West side of the Ice hauen, where we were forced in great cold, pouerty, misery, and griefe, to stay all that Winter, the winde then being East-North-east.

The 27 of August the Ice draue round about the ship, and yet it was good wether, at which time we went on land, and being there it began to blow South-east, with a reasonable gale, and then the Ice came with great force before the bough, and draue the ship vp foure foote high before, and behind it seemed as if the kéele lay on the ground, so that it séemed that the ship would be ouerthrowne in the place, whereupon they that were in the ship, put out the boate, therewith to saue their liues, and withall put out a flagge to make a signe to vs, to come on board: which we perceiuing, and beholding the ship to be lifted vp in that sort, made all the haste we could to get on board, thinking that the ship was burst in péeces, but comming vnto it, we found it to be in better case then we thought it had béene.

The 28 of August, wée gat some of the Ice from it, and the ship began to sit vpright againe, but before it was fully vpright, as William Barents and the other pilot went forward to the bough

to

to see how the ship lay, and how much it was risen; and while they were busie vpon their knees and elbowes to measure how much it was, the ship burst out of the Ice with such a noyse and so great a crack, that they thought verely that they were all cast away, knowing not how to saue them selues.

The 29 of August, the ship lying vpright againe, we vsed all the meanes we could, with yron hookes, & other instruments, to breake the flakes of Ice that lay one heap'd vpō the other, but al in vaine; so that we determined to commit our selues to the mercie of God, and to attend ayde from him, for that the Ice draue not away in any such sort that it could helpe vs.

The 30 of August, the Ice began to driue together one vpon the other with greater force then before, and bare against the ship vō a boystrous south-west wind, and a great snowe, so that all the whole ship was borne vp and inclosed, whereby all that was both about it and in it, began to crack, so that it seemed to burst in a 100 peeces, which was most fearfull both to see and heare, and made all ỹ haire of our heads to rise vpright with feare: & after ỹ, the ship (by the Ice on both sides that ioyned and got vnder the same) was driuen so vpright, in such sort, as if it had bin lifted vp with a wrench or vice.

The 31 of August, by the force of the Ice, the ship was driuen vp 4 or 5 foote high at the beake head, and the hinder part thereof lay in a clift of Ice, whereby we thought that the ruther would be freed from the force of the flakes of Ice, but notwithstanding, it brake in peeces staffe and all: and if that the hinder part of the ship had bin in the Ice that draue, as well as the fore part was, then all the ship would haue bin driuen wholly vpon the Ice, or possibly haue ran on groūd, and for that cause wee were in great feare, and set our Scutes and our boate out vpon the Ice, if neede were, to saue our selues, but within 4 houres after, the Ice draue away: of it selfe, wherewith we were exceeding glad, as if we had saued our liues, for that the ship was then on float againe, and vpon that we made a new ruther and a staffe, and hung the ruther out vpon the hooks, that if we chanced to be born vpon the Ice againe, as we had bin, it might so be freed from it.

The 1. of September being Sunday, while we were at praier, the Ice began to gather together againe, so that the ship was lifted

vp two fote at the least, but the Ice brake not. The same euening the Ice continued in ỹ sort still driuing and gathering together, so that we made preparation to drawe our Scute and the boate ouer the Ice vpon the land, the wind then blowing South-east.

The 2. of September, it snowed hard with a North-east wind, & the ship began to rise vp higher vpõ the Ice, at which time the Ice burst and crakt, with great force, so that we were of opinion to carry our Scute on land in that foule weather with 13. barrels of bread, & two hogsheds of wine to sustaine our selues if nèd were.

The 3 of Septẽber it blew hard but snowed not so much, ỹ wind being North Northeast, at which time we began to be loose from the Ice, whereunto we lay fast, so that the Scheck, broke from the Steuen, but the planks wherewith the ship was lyned, held the Scheck fast and made it hang on, but the boutlofe and a new cable if we had falled vpon the Ice) brake by the forcible pressing of the Ice, but held fast againe in the Ice, and yet the ship was staunch, which was wonder, in regard ỹ the Ice draue so hard, and in great heapes, as big as the salt hils that are in Spaine, and within a harquebus shot of the ship, betwæne the which we lay in great feare and anguishe.

The 4. of September, the weather began to cleare vp, and we sawe the Sunne, but it was very cold, the wind being North-east we being forced to lye still.

The 5. of September, it was faire sunshine weather and very calme, and at euening when we had sapt, the Ice compassed about vs againe, and we were hard inclosed therwith, the ship beginning to lye vpon the one side, and leakt sore, but by Gods grace, it became staunch againe, wherewith we were wholly in feare to loose the ship, it was in so great danger: at which time we tooke counsell together & caried our old sock saile, with pouder, lead, pèces, muskets & other furniture on land, to make a tent about our Scute, ỹ we had drawẽ vpon the land & at that time we carried some bread and wine on land also, with some timber, therewith to mend our boate, that it might serue vs in time of nède.

The 6. of September, it was indifferent faire sea-wether & sunshine, the wind being West, whereby we were somewhat comforted, hoping that the Ice would driue away, and that we might get from thence againe.

The

The 7. of September it was indifferent wether againe, but we perceiued no opening of the water, but to the contrary it lay hard inclosed with Ice, & no water at all about the ship, no not so much as a bucket full The same day 5 of our men went on land, but 2 of them came backe againe, the other three went forward about 2. miles into the land & there found a riuer of Sweet water, where also they found great store of wood, that had bin driuen thither, and there they foūd the foote-steps of harts and hinds, as they thought, for they were clouen foted, some greater foted then others, which made them Iudge them to be so.

The 8. of September,, it blew hard East North-east, which was a right contrary wind to doe vs any good touching the carrying away of the Ice, so that we were still faster in the Ice, which put vs in no small discomfort.

The 9. of September, it blew North-east, with a little snowe, whereby our ship was wholy inclosed with Ice for ỹ wind draue the Ice hard against it, so that we lay 3. or 4. foote deepe in the Ice, and our Sheck in the after steuer, brake in peeces, and the ship began to be somewhat loose before, but yet it was not much hurt.

In the night time two beares came close to our ship side, but we sounded our trumpet, and shot at them, but hit them not, because it was darke, and they ran away.

The 10. of September, the wether was somwhat better, because the wind blew not so hard, and yet all one wind.

The 11. of September it was calme wether, & 8. of vs went on land, euery man armed, to see if that were true as our other three companions had said, that there lay wood about the riuer, for that seeing we had so long wound and turned about, sometime in the Ice & then againe got out, & thereby were compelled to alter our course, and at last sawe that we could not get out of the Ice. but rather became faster, and could not lose our ship, as at other times we had done, as also that it began to be winter, we toke counsell together what we were best to doe, according to the time, that we might winter there, and attend such aduenture, as God would send vs: and after we had debated vpon the matter (to keepe and defend our selues both from the cold and the wild beasts) we determined to build a house vpon the land, to keepe vs therein as well

as

as we could, and so to commit our selues vnto the tuition of God, and to that end we went further into the land, to find out the conuenientest place in our opinions, to raise our house vpon, and yet we had not much stuffe to make it withall, in regard that there grew no trées nor any other thing in that country conuenient to buide it withall: but we leauing no occasion vnsought, as our men went abroad to view the country, and to sée what good fortune might happen vnto vs, at last we found an vnexpected comfort in our néed, which was, that we found certaine trées roots and all, (as our three companions had said before) which had bin driuen vpon the shoare, either from Tartaria, Muscouia, or else where; for there was none growing vpon that land, wherewith (as if God had purposely sent them vnto vs) we were much comforted, being in good hope, that God would shew vs some further fauour; for that wood serued vs not onely to build our house, but also to burne, and serue vs all the winter long, otherwise without all doubt, we had died there miserably with extreame cold.

How God in our extremest need, when we were forced to lye all the winter vpon the land sent vs wood to make vs a house, and to serue vs to burne in the cold winter.

The 12 of September it was calme wether, and then our men went vnto the other side of the land, to sée if they could finde any wood nérer vnto vs, but there was none.

The 13 of September, it was calme but very misty wether, so that we could doe nothing, because it was dangerous for vs to go into the land, in regard that we could not sée the wild beares, and yet they could smell vs, for they smell better then they sée.

The 14 of September it was clére sunshine wether, but very cold, and then we went into the land, and laid the wood in heapes one vpō the other, that it might not be couered ouer with ỹ snow, and from thence ment to carry it to the place where we intended to builde our house.

The 15 of september, in the morning, as one of our men held watche, wée saw three beares, whereof the one lay still behind a péece of Ice, the other two came close to the ship; which we perceiuing, made our péeces ready to shoote at them, at which time there stod a tub full of béefe, vpon the Ice, which lay in the water to be seasoned, for that close by the ship there was no water: one of the Beares went vnto it, and put in his head to take out a péece of the béefe, but she fared therewith, as the dog did with ỹ pudding, for as she was snatching at the béefe, she was shot into

the head wherewith she fell downe dead, and neuer stir'd: the other beare stood still, and lokt vpon her fellow, and when she had stood a good while, she smelt her fellow, and perceiuing that she was dead, she ran away, but we toke halberts and other armes with vs and followed her, and at last she came againe towards vs, and we prepared our selues to withstand her, wherewith she rose vp vpon her hinder feet, thinking to rampe at vs, but while she reared her selfe vp, one of our men shot her into the belly, and with that she fell vpon her fore-feet againe, and roaring as loud as she could, ran away. Then we toke the dead beare, and ript her belly open; and taking out her guts, we set her vpon her fore feet, that so she might freese as she stood, intending to carry her w̄ vs into Holland, if we might get our ship lose, & when we had set ỹ beare vpon her foure feet, we began to make a slead, thereon to drawe the wood to the place where we went to build our house, at that time it froze two fingers thicke in the salt water, and it was exceeding cold, the wind blowing North-east.

The 16. of September, the sunne shone, but towards the euening it was misty, the wind being easterly, at which time we went to fetch wood with our sleads, & then we drew foure beames aboue a mile vpon the Ice and the snow, that night againe it frose aboue two fingers thicke.

The 17. of September thirteene of vs went where the wood lay, with our sleads, and so drew fiue and fiue in a slead, and the other three helped to lift the wood behind, to make vs draw the better, and with more ease, and in that manner we drew wood twice a day, and laid it on a heape by the place where we ment to build our house.

The 18. of September the wind blew west, but it snowed hard, and we went on land againe to continue our labour, to draw wood to our place appointed, and after dinner the sun shone and it was calme wether.

The 19. of September, it was calme sunshine wether, and we drew two sleads full of wood fiue thousand paces long, and that we did twice a day.

The 21 of September, it was misty wether, but towards euening it cleared vp, and the Ice still drawe in the sea, but not so strongly as it did before, but yet it was very cold.

The 22 of September, it was faire still weather, but very cold, the wind being west.

The 23 of september, we fetcht more wood to build our house, which we did twice a day, but it grew to be misty and still weather againe, the wind blowing East, and East-north-East, that day our Carpentur being of purnecaet dyed, as we came aboord about euening.

The 24 of September, we buryed him, vnder the seiges, in the clift of a hill, hard by the water, for we could not dig vp the earth, by reason of the great frost and cold, and that day we went twice with our sleads to fetch wood.

The 25 of September, it was darke weather, the wind blowing West and West-south-west, and south-west, and the Ice begã somewhat to open, and driue away; but it continued not long, for that hauing driuen about the length of the shot of a great Peece, it lay three fadoms deepe vpon the ground: and where we lay, the Ice draue not, for we lay in the middle of the Ice, but if we had layne in the maine sea, we would haue hoysed sayle, although it was thẽ late in the yeare. The same day we raised vp the principles of our house, and began to worke hard thereon, but if the ship had bin lose we would haue left our building, and haue made our after Steuen of our ship, that we might haue bin ready to saile away if it had bin possible, for that it grieued vs much to lye there all that cold winter, which we knew would fall out to be extreame bitter, but being bereaued of all hope, we were compelled to make necessity a vertue, and with patience to attend what issue God would send vs.

The 26 of September, we had a west wind and an open sea, but our ship lay fast, wherewith we were not a little greeued, but it was Gods will, which we most patiently bare, and we began to make vp our house, part of our men fetchd wood to burne, the rest played the Carpenters: and were busie about the house, as then we were sixteene men in all, for our Carpenter was dead, and of our sixteene men there was still one or other sicke.

The 27 of September it blew hard north-east, and it frose so hard, that as we put a nayle into our mouthes, (as when men worke Carpenters worke they vse to doe) there would Ice hang thereon when wee tooke it out againe, and make the blood fol-

low,

low: the same day there came an old Beare and a yong one towards vs, as we were going to our house, beeing altogether (for we durst not go alone) which we thought to shot at, but she ran away, at which time the Ice came forcibly driuing in, and it was faire sunshine weather but so extreame cold, that we could hardly worke, but extremity forced vs thereunto.

The 28 of September, it was faire weather, and the sun shon, the wind being west and very calme, the sea as then being open, but our ship lay fast in the Ice and stirred not, the same day there came a beare to the ship, but when she espied vs, she ran away and we made as much hast as we could to build our house.

The 29. of September in the morning, the wind was West, and after none it blew Northly, and then we saw three Beares betweene vs and the house, an old one and two yong; but we notwithstanding drew our goods from the ship to the house, and so got before ỹ Beares, & yet they followed vs: neuertheles we would not shun the way for them, but hollowed out as loud as we could, thinking that they would haue gone away, but they would not once go out of their foote-path, but got before vs, wherewith we, and they that were at the house, made a great noise, which made the Beares runne away, and wee were not a little glad thereof.

The 30. of September the winde was East, & East-south-east, and all that night and the next day it snowed so fast, that our men could fetch no wood it lay so close and high one vpon the other: then we made a great fire without the house, therewith to thaw the ground, that so we might lay it about the house, that it might be the closer; but it was all lost labour, for the earth was so hard, and frozen so deep into the ground, that we could not thaw it, and it would haue cost vs too much wood, and therefore we were forced to leaue off that labour.

The first of October the winde blew stiffe, North-east, & after none it blew North, with a great storme, & drift of snow, whereby we could hardly go in the winde, and a man could hardly draw his breath, the snow draue so hard in our faces, at which time we could not see two ships length from vs.

The 2. of October before none, the sun shone, and after none it was cloudy againe, and it snew, but the weather was still, the

winde being North, and then south, and we set vp our house, and vpon it we placed a May-pole made of frozen snowe.

The 3. of October before noone, it was calme Son-shine-weather, but so cold, that it was hard to be indured, and after noone it blew hard out of the West, with so great and extreame cold, that if it had continued, we should haue beene forced to leaue our worke.

The fourth of October, the winde was West, and after noone North, with great store of snow, whereby we could not worke: at that time we brought our Anker vpon the Ice to lye the faster, when we lay but an arrow shot from the water, the Ice was so much driuen away.

The 5. of October, it blew hard North-west, and the Sea was very open and without Ice, as farre as we could discerne, but we lay still frozen as we did before, and our ship lay two or three fote deepe in the Ice, and we could not perceiue otherwise, but that we lay fast vpon the ground, and then it was three fadome and a halfe deepe. The same day we brake vp the lower deck of the fore-part of our ship, and with those deales we couered our houses, and made it slope ouer head, that the water might run off, at which time it was very cold.

The 6. of October it blew hard West South-west, but towards euening, West North-west, with a great snow, that we could hardly thrust our heads out of the doze, by reason of ỹ great cold.

The 7. of October it was indifferent good wether, but yet very cold, and we calk't our house, and brake the ground about it at the fote thereof; that day the winde went round about the compasse.

The 8. of October, all the night before, it blew so hard, and the same day also, and snowed so fast, that we should haue smothered, if we had gone out into the aire; and to speake truth, it had not beene possible for any man to haue gone one ships length, though his life had laine thereon: for it was not possible for vs to goe out of the house or ship.

The 9. of October the winde still continued North, and blew and snowed hard, all that day the wind as then blowing from the land, so that all that day we were forced to stay in the ship the wether

ther was so foule.

The 10. of October the weather was somewhat fairer, and the winde calmer, and blew South-west, and West, and South-west, and that time the water flowed two foote higher then ordinary, which wee gest to proceede from the first North wind, which as then had blowne. The same day the wether began to bee somewhat better, so that we began to go out of our ship againe: and as one of our men went out, he chaunced to méete a Beare, and was almost at him before he knew it, but presently he ranne backe againe towards the ship, and the Beare after him; but the Beare comming to the place where before that we killed another Beare, and set her vpright, and there let her freeze, which after was couered ouer with Ice, and yet one of her pawes reached aboue it, shee stood still, whereby our man got before her, and clome vp into the ship, in great feare, crying, A beare, a beare, which we hearing? came aboue hatches to loke on her, & to shote at her, but we could not see her, by meanes of the exceeding great smoake, that had so sore tormented (vs while we lay vnder hatches) in the foule wether, which we would not haue indured for any money, but by reason of the cold and snowy wether, we were constrained to do it, if we would saue our liues, for aloft in the ship we must vndoubtedly haue dyed? the beare staied not long there, but run away, the wind then being North-east.

The same day about euening, it was faire wether, and we went out of our ship to the house, and carryed the greatest part of our bread thither.

The 11. of October it was calme wether, the wind being south, and somewhat warme, and then we carryed our wine and other victuals on land: & as we were hoysing the wine ouer-bord, there came a beare towards our ship, that had laine behinde a péece of Ice, and it séemed that we had waked her with the noise we made: for we had séene her lye there, but we thought her to be a péece of Ice; but as she came nére vs, we shot at her, and shee ran away, so we proceeded in our worke.

The 12. of October it blew North, and somewhat westerly, and then halfe of our men kept in the house, and that was the first time that we lay in it, but we indured great cold, because our cabins were not made; & besides that we had not clothes inough, &

we could kéepe no fire because our chimney was not made, where-
by it smoaked exce.dingly.

The 13. of October the winde was North and North-west, &
it began againe to blow hard, and then three of vs went a bord the
ship, and laded a slead with béere, but when we had laden it, think-
ing to go to our house with it, sodainly there rose such a wind, &
so great a storme and cold, that we were forced to go into the ship
againe, because we were not able to stay without, and we could
not get the béere into the ship againe, but were forced to let it stand
without vpon the sleade: being in the ship, we indured extreame
cold, because we had but a few clothes in it.

The 14. of October, as we came out of the ship, we found the
barrell of béere standing vpon the sleade, but it was fast frozen at
the heads, yet by reason of the great cold, the béere that purged
out, froze as hard vpon the side of the barrel as if it had bin glewed
thereon, and in that sort we drew it to our house, and set the bar-
rell an end, and dranke it first vp, but we were forced to melt the
béere, for there was scant any vnfrozen béere in the barrell, but in
that thicke yeast that was vnfrozen lay the strength of the béere, so
that it was too strong to drinke alone, and that which was frozen
tasted like water, and being melted we mixt one with the other,
and so dranke it, but it had neither strength nor tast.

The 15 of October the wind blew North and east, & East South
east, that day we mad place to set vp our doze, and shouled the
snowe away.

The 16 of October, the wind blew South east and by South-
east, with faire calme weather: the same night there had bin a
Beare in our ship, but in the morning she went out againe, when
she saw our men: at the same time we brake vp another péece of
our ship, to vse the deales about the portall, which as then we be-
gan to make.

The 17 of October, the wind, was South and South-east,
calme weather, but very cold, and that day we were busied about
our portaile.

The 18 of October, the wind blew hard East South-east, and
then we fetched our bread out of the Scute which we had drawne
vp vpon the land, and the wine also which as then was not much
frozen, and yet it had layne sixe weeks therein, and not withstand-

ding

ing that it had often times frozen very hard. The same day we saw an other beare, and then the sea was so couered ouer with Ice that we could see no open water.

The 19 of October ẏ wind blew North-east, & then there was out two men & a boy in the ship, at which time there came a Beare that sought forcibly to get into the ship, although the two men shot at her with peeces of wood, and yet she ventured vpon them, whereby they were in an extreame feare, each of them seeking to saue themselues, the two men leapt into the baluſt, and the boy clomed into the fot mast top, to saue their liues, meane time some of our men, shot at her with a musket, and then shee ran away.

The 20 of October it was calme sunshine weather, and then againe we saw the sea open, at which time we went on bord to fetch the rest of our beere out of the ship, where we found some of the barrels frozen in peeces, and the Iron heapes that were vpon the Iosam barrels were also frozen in peeces.

The 21 of October, it was calme sunshine wether, and then we had almost fetched all our victuals out of the ship.

The 22 of October, the wind blew coldly, and very stiff North-east, with so great a snow, that we could not get out of our doores.

The 23 of October, it was calme weather, and the wind blew North-east, then we went abord our ship, to see if the rest of our men would come home to the house; but wee feared ẏ it would blow hard againe, and therefore durst not stirre with the sicke man, but let him ly still that day, for he was very weake.

The 24. of October, the rest of our men being 8. persons, came to the house, and drew the sicke man vpon a slead, and then with great labour and paine, we drew our boate home to our house, and turned the bottome thereof vpwards, that when time serued vs (if God saued our liues in the Winter time) wee might vse it: and after that, perceiuing that the ship lay fast, and that there was nothing lesse to be expected then the opening of the water, we put our Anchor into the ship againe, because it should not be couered ouer and lost in the snow, that in the spring time we might vse it; for wee alwaies trusted in GOD that hee

would

would deliuer vs from thence towards Sommer time, either one way or other.

Things standing at this point with vs, as the sunne, when wee might see it best and highest, began to be very low, we vsed all the spéede we could to fetch all things with sleades out of our ship into our house, not onely meate and drinke, but all other necessaries, at which time the winde was North.

The 25. of October, we fetcht all things that were necessary for the furnishing of our Scute and our Boate: and when we had laden the last slead, and stood ready to draw it to the house, our maister loked about him and saw thrée Beares behind the ship that were comming towards vs, whereupon he cryed out aloud to feare them away, & we presently leaped forth to defend our selues as well as we could: and, as good fortune was, there lay two halberds vpon the slead, whereof the master toke one, and I the other, and made resistance against them, as well as we could; but the rest of our men ran to saue themselues in the ship, and as they ran, one of them fell into a clift of Ice, which greeued vs much: for we thought verily that the beares would haue ran vnto him, to deuoure him, but God defended him: for the Beares still made towards the ship after the men y ran thither to saue themselues. Meane time, we and the man that fel into the clift of Ice, toke our aduantage, and got into the ship on the other side, which the Beares perceiuing, they came fiercely towards vs, that had no other armes to defend vs withall, but onely the two halberds, which wee doubting would not be sufficient, wee still gaue them worke to do by throwing billets and other things at them, and euery time we threw, they ran after them as a dogge vseth to doe at a stone that is cast at him. Meane time we sent a man down vnder hatches to strike fire, and another to fetch pikes, but wee could get no fire, and so we had no meanes to shoote: at the last as the Beares came fiercely vpon vs, we strake one of them with a halberd vpon the snoute, wherewith she gaue back, when shee felt her selfe hurt, and went away, which the other two y were not so great as she, perceiuing, ran away: and we thanked God that wee were so well deliuered from them, & so drew our slead quietly to our house, and there shewed our men what had happened vnto vs.

The

The 26. of October the wind was North, and North-North-West, with indifferent faire wether: then we saw open water hard by the land, but we perceiued the Ice to driue in the sea, still towards the ship.

The 27. of October, the wind blew North-east, and it snowed so fast, that we could not worke without the doore. That day our men kil'd a white Fox, which they flead: and after they had rosted it, ate thereof, which tasted like Connies flesh: the same day we set vp our diall, and made the clock strike, and we hung vp a lamp to burne in the night time, wherein we vsed the fat of the beare, which we molt and burnt in the lampe.

The 28. of October, wee had the wind North-east, and then our men went out to fetch wood, but there fell so stormy wether, and so great a snow, that they were forced to come home againe: about euening the wether began to breake vp, at which time three of our men wen to the place where we had set the beare vpright, and there stood frozen thinking to pull out her teeth, but it was cleane couered ouer with snow: and while they were there, it began to snow so fast againe, that they were glad to come home, as fast as they could; but the snow beat so sore vpon them, that they could hardly see their way, & had almost lost their right way, whereby they had like to haue laine all that night out of the house.

The 29. of October the wind still blew North-east, & then we fetch'd segges from the Sea side, & laid them vpon the saile, that was spread vpon our house, that it might be so much the closer & warmer: for the deales were not driuen close together, and the foule wether would not permit vs to do it.

The 30. of October, the wind yet continued North-east, and then the Sunne was full aboue the earth, a little aboue the Horison.

The 31. of October, the wind still blew North-east, w great store of snow, whereby we durst not looke out of doores.

The first of Nouember the wind still continued North-east, & then we saw the moone rise in the East when it began to be darke, and the Sunne was no higher aboue the Horizon than wee could well see it, and yet that day we saw it not, because of the close wether and the great snow that fell, and it was extreame cold, so that

we could not go out of the house.

The 2. of Nouember, the Wind blew West, and somewhat South, but in the euening it blew North, with calme wether, and that day we saw the Sunne rise South, South-east, and it went downe South South-West, but it was not full aboue the earth, but passed in the Horizon along by the earth: and the same day one of our men killed a Fox with a hatchet, which was flead, rosted and eaten: before the Sunne began to decline; we saw no Foxes, and then the Beares vsed to go from vs.

The 3. of Nouember the Wind blew North-West w̄ calme wether, and the Sunne rose South and by East, and somewhat more southerly, and went downe South and by West, and somewhat more Southerly; and then we could see nothing but the vpper part of the Sun aboue the Horizon, and yet the land where we were, was as high as the mast of our ship, then we toke the height of the Sunne, it being in the eleuenth degree and 48. minutes off Scorpio, his declination being 15. degrees and 24. minutes on the South side of the Equinoctiall line.

The 4. of Nouember it was calme wether, but then we saw the Sunne no more, for it was no longer aboue the Horizon, then our Chirurgion made a bath (to bathe vs in) of a Wine pipe, wherein we entred one after the other, and it did vs much good, and was a great meanes of our health. The same day we toke a white Fox, that often times came abroad, not as they vsed at other times: for that when the Beares left vs at the setting of the Sunne, and came not againe before it rose, the Fox to the contrary came abroad when they were gone.

The 5. of Nouember the wind was North, & somewhat West, and then we saw open water vpon the Sea, but our ship lay still fast in the Ice, and when the Sunne had left vs, we saw ẏ Mone continually both day and night, and neuer went downe when it as in the highest degree.

The 6. of Nouember the wind was North-West, still wether, and then our men fetcht a flead full of fire-wood, but by reason that the Son was not seene, it was very dark wether.

The 7. of Nouember it was darke wether, and very still, the wind West at which time we could hardly discerne the day from the night, specially because at that time our clock stood still,

and

and by that meanes we knew not when it was day, although it was day, and our men rose not out of their Tabens all that day; but onely to make water, and therefore they knew not whether the light they saw, was the light of the day or of the Mone, whereupõ they were of seueral opinions, some saying it was the light of the day, the others of the night: but as we toke good regard thereunto, we found it to be the light of the day, about twelue of the clock at noone.

The 8. of Nouember, it was still wether, the wind blowing South, and South-West. The same day our men fetcht another stead of firewood, and then also we toke a white Fox, and saw open water in the Sea. The same day we shared our bread amõgst vs, each man hauing foure pound and ten ounces, for his allowance in eight daies, so that then we were eight daies eating a barrell of bread, whereas before we ate it vp in fiue or sixe daies: we had no need to share our flesh and fish, for we had more store thereof, but our drinke failed vs, and therefore we were forced to share that also: but our best beere was for the most part wholly without any strength, so that it had no sauour at all: and besides all this, there was a great deale of it spilt.

The 9. of Nouember the wind blew North-east, and somewhat more Northerly, and then we has not much day-light, but it was altogether darke.

The 10 of Nouember, it was calme wether, the wind North-West, and then our men went into the ship to see how it lay, and wee saw that there was a great deale of water in it, so that the ballast was couered ouer with water, but that it was frozen, and so might not be pump't out.

The 11. of Nouember it was indifferent wether, the wind North-west: the same day we made a round thing of cable yearn, & like to a net, to catch Fores withall, that we might get them into the house, & it was made like a trap, which fell vpon the Fores as they came vnder it, and that day we caught one.

The 12. of Nouember the wind blew East, with a little light: that day we began to share our wine, euery man had two glasses a day, but commonly our drinke was water, which we molt out of snow which we gathered without the house.

The 13. of Nouember it was foule wether, with great snow,

the wind East.

The 14. of Nouember it was faire cleare wether, with a cleare sky, full of starres, and an East-wind.

The 15. of Nouember it was darke wether, the wind North-east, with a bading light.

The 16. of Nouember it was wether with a temperate aire, and an East-wind.

The 17. of Nouember it was darke wether, and a close aire, the wind East.

The 18. of Nouember it was foule wether, the wind South-east: then the maister cut vp a packe of course clothes, and diuided it amongst our men that néeded it, therewith to defend vs better from the cold.

The 19. of Nouember, it was foule weather, with an East wind, and then the chest with linnin was opened, and deuided amongst the men for shift, for they had néed of them, for then our onely care was to find all the means we could to defend our body from the cold.

The 20. of Nouember, it was faire still weather, the wind Easterly, then we washt our shéets, but it was so cold, that when we had washt and wrong them, they presently froze so stiffe, that although we lay'd them by a great fire, the side that lay next the fire thawed, but the other side was hard frozen, so that we should sooner haue torne them in sunder then haue opened them, whereby we were forced to put them into the séething water againe to thaw them, it was so exceeding cold.

The 21. of Nouember, it was indifferent wether with a North-east-wind, then wee agréed that euery man should take his turne to cleaue wood, thereby to ease our coke, that had more then worke inough to doe twice a day to dresse meat, & to melt snowe for our drinke, but our Master & the Pilot, were exempted from ỹ work.

The 22. of Nouember, the wind was south-east, it was faire wether, then we had but seuentéene chéeses, whereof one we ate amongst vs, and the rest were deuided to euery man one, for his portion, which they might eate when he list.

The 23. of Nouember, it was indifferent good weather, the wind South-east, and as we perceiued that the Fox vsed to come oftner, and more then they were wont, to take them the better,

we

we made certaine traps of thicke planks, wheron we laid stones, & round about them placed peces of Shards fast in the ground, that they might not dig vnder them, and so got some of the foxes.

The 24. of Nouember, it was foule weather, & the winde North-east, & then we prepared our selues to go into the bath, for some of vs were not very well at ease, and so foure of vs went into it, and when we came out, our Surgion gaue vs a purgation, which did vs much good, and that day we toke foure Foxes.

The 25. of Nouember, it was faire cleare weather, the winde West; and that day we toke two foxes, with a springs that we had purposely set vp.

The 26. of Nouember, it was foule weather, and a great storme with a South-west-wind, and great store of snowe, whereby we were so closed vp in the house, that we could not goe out, but were forced to ease our selues within the house.

The 27. of Nouember, it was faire cleare weather, the wind South-west, and then we made more Springes to get Fors, for it stood vs vpon to doe it, because they serued vs for meat, as if God had sent them purposely for vs, for wee had not much meate.

The 28. of Nouember, it was foule stormie weather, and the wind blew hard out of the North, and it snew hard, whereby we were shut vp againe in our house, the snow lay so closed before the doores.

The 29. of Nouember, it was faire cleare wether, & a good aire: y wind Northerly, and we found meanes to open our doore, by shouelling away the snowe, whereby we got one of our doores open, and going out, we found al our Traps and Springes cleane couered ouer with snow, which we made cleane, and set them vp again to take Foxes: and that day we toke one, which as then serued vs not onely for meat, but of the skins we made Caps to were vpon our heads, therewith to kéepe them warme from the extreame cold.

The 30. of Nouember, it was faire cleare weather, the wind West, and fiue of vs went to the ship, all wel prouided of arms to sée how it lay: and when we went vnder the fore decke, we toke a Fore aliue in the ship.

The 1. of December, it was foule weather with a South-west-

wind, and great stoare of snow, whereby we were once againe stopt vp in the house, & by that meanes there was so great a smoke in the house, that we could hardly make fire, and so were forced to lye all day in our cabens, but the Coke was forced to make fire to dresse our meat.

The 2. of December, it was still foule weather, whereby we were forced to kéep stil in the house, & yet we could hardly sit by the fire, because of the smoake, and therefore stayd still in our cabens, and then we heated stones, which we put into our Cabens to warm our féet, for that both the cold and the smoke were vnsupportable.

The 3. of December we had the like weather, at which time as we lay in our Cabans, we might heare the Ice crack in the sea, and yet it was at the least halfe a mile from vs, which made a hugh noyse, and we were of oppinion, that as then the great hils of Ice which we had séene in the sea, in summer time, brake one from the other, & for that during those 2. or 3. dayes, because of the extreame smoake, we made not so much fire as we commonly vsed to doe, it froze so sore within the house, that the wals and the rofe thereof were frozen two fingers thick with Ice, and also in our Cabans where we lay all those thrée daies, while we could not goe out: by reason of the foule weather, we set vp the glas of 12. houres, & whē it was run out, we set it vp againe, stil watching it lest we should misse our time. For the cold was so great, that our Clock was frozen, and might not goe, although we hung more waight on it then before.

The 4. of December, it was faire cleare weather, the wind Northeast, and then we began euery man by turne to dig open our doores that were closed vp with snow, for we saw that it would be often to doe, and therefore we agréed to work by turns, no man excepted but the Maister and the Pilot.

The 5. of December, it was faire weather, with an East-wind and then we made our Springes cleane againe to take Fores.

The 6 of December, it was foule weather againe, with an Easterly wind, and extreame cold, almost not to be indured, whereupon we lokt pittifully one vpon the other, being in great feare, that if the extremity of ỹ cold grew to be more & more, we should all die there with cold, for that what fire soeuer we made, it would

not

not warme vs, yea and our sack which is so hotte, was frozen very hard, so that when we were euery man to haue his part, we were forced to melt it in the fire, which we shared euery second day about halfe a pint for a man, wherewith we were forced to sustain our selues, and at other times we drank water, which agreed not well with the cold, and we néeded not to cole it with snowe or Ice, but we were forced to melt it out of the snow.

The 7. of December, it was still foule weather, and we had a great storme, with a North-east-wind, which brought an extreame cold with it, at which time we knew not what to do, & while we sate consulting together, what were best for vs to do, one of our companions gaue vs counsell to burne some of the sea-coles that we had brought out of the ship, which would cast a great heat and continue long, and so at euening we made a great fire thereof, which cast a great heat: at which time we were very carefull to kéepe it in: for that the heat being so great a comfort vnto vs, we toke care how to make it continue long: whereupon wee agréed to stop vp all the doores and the chimney, thereby to kéepe in the heate, and so went into our cabans to sléepe, well comforted with the heat, and so lay a great while talking together; but at last we were taken with a great swounding and daseling in our heads, yet some more then other some, which we first perceiued by a sick man, and therefore the lesse able to beare it, & found our selues to be very ill at ease, so that some of vs that were strongest, start out of their cabans, and first opened the chimney, and then the doores, but he that opened the doore fell downe in a swound vpon the snow, which I hearing, as lying in my Caban next to the doore, start vp, and casting vinegar in his face, recouered him againe, and so he rose vp: and when the doores were open, we all recouered our healthes againe, by reason of the cold aire, and so the cold which before had béene so great an enemy vnto vs, was then the onely relieue that we had, otherwise without doubt, we had died in a sodaine swound, after ý the Master, when we were come to our selues againe, gaue euery one of vs a little wine to comfort our hearts.

The 8. of December, it was foule weather, the wind Norther-ly, very sharpe and cold, but we durst lay no more coles on, as we did the day before, for that our misfortune had taught vs, that to

shun

thun one danger we should not run into an other.

The 9. of December, it was faire cleare weather, the skie full of Starres, then we set our doore wide open, which before was fast closed vp with snowe, and made our Springes ready to take Fores.

The 10. of December it was still faire Star-light weather, the wind North-east: then we toke two Fores, which were good meate for vs, for as then our victuals began to be scant, and the cold still increased, whereunto their skins serued vs for a good defence.

The 11. of December, it was faire weather, and a cleare aire, but very cold, which he that felt not would not beléeue, for our shoes froze as hard as hornes vpon our fæt, and within, they were white frozen, so that we could not weare our shoes, but were forced to make great pattens, ẏ vpper part being ship skins, which we put one ouer three or foure paire of socks, and so went in them to kæpe our fæt warms.

The 12 of December, it was faire cleare weather, with a North-west-wind, but extreame cold, so that our house walles and Cabans where frozen a finger thicke, yea and the clothes vpon our backs were white ouer with frost, and although some of vs were of opinion that we should lay more coles vpon the fire to warme vs, and that we should let the chimney stand open, yet we durst not do it, fearing the like danger we had escaped.

The 13. of December it was faire cleare wether, with an East wind: then we toke another Fox, and toke great paines about preparing and dressing of our springes, with no small trouble, for that if we staied too long without the doores, there arose blisters vpon our faces and our eares.

The 14. of December it was faire wether, the wind North-east, and the sky full of starres, then we toke the height of ẏ right shoulder of the Rens. When it was South South-west, & somewhat more Westerly (and then it was, at the highest in our compas) and it was eleuated aboue the Horison twenty degrées and twenty eight minutes, his declination being six degrées, and eighteene minuts on the North side of the lyne, which declination being taken out of the height aforesaid, there rested fourteen degrées, which being take out of 90. degrées, then the height of ẏ pole was seuenty

six,

sixe degrées.

The 15 of December it was still faire weather, the wind East: that day we toke two Fores, and saw the Moone rise East-south-east, when it was twenty sixe daies old, in the signe of Scorpio.

The 16. of December, it was faire cleare weather, the wind East: at that time we had no more wood in the house. but had burnt it all: but round about our house there lay some couered ouer with snow, which with great paine and labour we were forced to digge out and so shouell away the snow, and so brought it into the house, which we did by turns, two and two together, wherin we were forced to vse great spéede, for we could not long endure without the house, because of the extreame cold, although we ware the Fores skinnes about our heads, and double apparell vpon our backs.

The 17. of December, the wind still held North east, with faire weather, and so great frosts, that we were of opinion, that if there stood a barrell full of water without the doze, it would in one night freeze from the top to the bottome.

The 18. of December, the wind still held North-east, with faire wether: then seuen of vs went out vnto the ship, to sée how it lay, and being vnder the decke, thinking to find a For there, we sought all the holes, but we found none; but when we entred into the Caben, and had stricken fire to sée in what case the ship was, and whether the water rose higher in it, there wée found a For, which we toke, and carried it home, and ate it, and then we found that in eightéene dayes absence (for it was so long since we had béene there) the water was risen about a finger high, but yet it was all Ice, for it froze as fast as it came in, and the vessels which we had brought with vs full of fresh water out of Holland, were frozen to the ground.

The 19. of December it was faire wether, the wind being South: then we put each other in good comfort, that the sun was then almost halfe ouer, and ready to come to vs againe, which we forelonged for, it being a weary time for vs to be without the Sunne, and to want the greatest comfort that God sendeth vnto man here vpon the earth, and that w̄ reioiceth euery liuing thing. The 20. of Dece. before none, it was faire cleare wether, and then

we had taken a Fox, but towards euening there rose such a storm in the South-west, with so great a snow that all the house was inclosed therewith.

The 21. of December it was faire cléere wether, with a North-east wind, then we made our doore cleane againe, and made a way to go out, and clensed our traps for the Foxes, which did vs great pleasure when we toke them, for they seemed as dainty as Venison vnto vs.

The 22. of December it was foule wether, with great store of snow, the wind South-west, which stopt vp our doore againe, and we were forced to dig it open againe, which was almost euery day to do.

The 23. of December it was foule wether, the wind South-west, with great store of snow, but we were in good cõfort that the Sunne would come againe to vs, for as we gest, that day he was in Tropicus Capricorni, which is the furthest signe that the sunne passeth on the South side of the line, and from thence it turneth North-ward againe. This Tropicus Capricorni lyeth on the South side of the Equinoctiall line, in twenty three degrées and eightéene minutes.

The 24. of December being Christmas Euen, it was faire wether, then we opened our doore againe, and saw much open water in the sea: for we had heard the Ice crack and driue: although it was not day, yet we could sée so farre: towards euening it blew hard out of the North-east, with great store of snow, so that all the passage that wee had made open before, was stopt vp againe.

The 25. of December being Christmas day, it was foule wether, with a North-west-wind, and yet though it was foule wether, we hard the Foxes run ouer our house, wherewith some of our men said it was an ill signe; and while we sate disputing why it should be an ill signe, some of our men made answere, that it was an ill signe because we could not take them, to put them into the pot to roll them, for that had béene a very good signe for vs.

The 26. of December it was foule wether, the wind North-west, and it was so cold that we coule not warme vs, although we vsed all the meanes we could with great fires, good store of clothes, and with hot stones, and billets laid vpon our féete and

vpon

vpon our bodies, as we lay in our Cabens, but notwithstanding all this, in the morning our Cabens were frozen, which made vs behold one the other with sad countenance, but yet we comforted our selues againe as well as we could, that the Sunne was then as low as it could goe, and that it now began to come to vs againe, and we found it to be true: for that the daies beginning to lengthen, the cold began to strengthen, but hope put vs in good comfort, and eased our paine.

The 27. of December it was still foule wether, with a North-west wind, so that as then we had not bene out in three daies together, nor durst not thrust our heads out of doores, and within the house it was so extreme cold, that as we sate before a great fire, and seemed to burne on the fore side, we froze behinde at our backs, and were al white as the countrymen vse to be when they come in at the gates of the towne in Holland with their sleads, and haue gone all night.

The 28. of December it was still foule wether with a West-wind, but about euening it began to cleare vp, at which time one of our men made a hole open at one of our doores, and went out to see what newes abroad, but found it so hard wether that he stayed not long, and told vs that it had snowed so much that the Snow lay higher then our house, and that if he had stayed out longer, his eares would vndoubtedly haue bene frozen off.

The 29. of December it was calme wether, and a pleasant aire the wind being Southward: that day, he, whose turne it was, opened the doore, and digd a hole through the snow, where wee went out of the house vpon steps, as if it had bin out of a Seller, at least seuen or eight steps high, each step a foote from the other, and then we made cleane our springes for the Fores, whereof for certaine daies we had not taken any: and as we made them cleane, one of our men found a dead Fox in one of them, that was frozen as hard as a stone, which he brought into the house, and thawed it before the fire, and after, fleaing it, some of our men ate it.

The 30. of December it was foule wether againe, with a storme out of the West, and great store of snow, so that all the labour and paine that we had taken the day before to make steps to go out of our house, and to cleanse our springes, was al in vaine,

for it was al couered ouer w̄ snow againe, higher thē it was before.

The 31. of December it was still foule wether, with a storme out of the North-west, whereby we were so fast shut vp into the house, as if we had bene prisoners, and it was so extreame cold, that the fire almost cast no heate: for as we put our fete to the fire, we burnt our hose before we could feele the heate, so that we had work inough to do to patch our hose: and which is more, if we had not soner smelt, then felt them, we should haue burnt them ere we had knowne it.

After that with great cold, danger, & disease, we had brought this yeare vnto an end, we entred into ẏ yeare of our Lord God 1597. ẏ beginning whereof, was in ẏ same maner as ẏ end of Anno 1596. had bēn, for the wether continued as cold, foule, & snowy as it was before, so that vpon the first of January we were inclosed in the house ẏ wind thē being West: at the same time we agréd to share our wine euery man a small measure full, and that but once in two daies: and as we were in great care and feare that it would be long before we should get out frō thence, (& we hauing but smal hope therin) some of vs spared to drink wine as long as wée could, that if we should stay long there, we might drinke it at our nēde.

The 2. of January, it blew hard, with a West wind, and a great storme, with both snow and frost, so that in four or fiue daies we durst not put our heads out of ẏ doores, & as then by reason of the great cold, we had almost burnt all our wood, notwithstanding we durst not goe out to fetch more wood, because it froze so hard, & there was no being without the doze, but séeking about we found some pēces of wood, that lay ouer the doze, which we cloue, and withall cloue the blocks whereon we vsed to beate our stock-fish, and so holp our selues so well as we could.

The 3. of January, it was all one weather, and we had little wood to burne.

The 4. of January, it was still foule stormie weather, with much snow and great cold, the wind South-west, and we were forced to kēepe in the house: and to know where the wind blew, we thrust a halfe pike out at ẏ chimney, w̄ a little cloth, or fether vpon it, but as sone as we thrust it out, it was presently frozen as hard as a pēce of wood, and could not go about nor stirre with the wind.

The 5. of January, it was somewhat still and calme weather:

then

then we digd our dwze open againe, that we might goe out, and carry out all the filth that had bin made during the time of our being shut in the house; and made euery thing handsome, and fetched in wood, which we cleft, and it was all our dayes worke to further our selues as much as we could, fearing left we should be shut vp againe: and as there were thrée dwzes in our portall, and for ỹ our house lay couered ouer in snow, we toke ỹ middle dwze thereof away, and digged a great hole in the snow, that laie without the houſe, like to a side of a vault, wherein we might go to ease ourselues, and cast other filth into it: and when we had taken paines al day, we remembred our selues that it was Twelf Euen, & then we prayed our Maister that we might be merry that night, and said that we were content to spend some of the wine that night which we had spared, and which was our share euery second day, and whereof for certaine daies we had not drunke; and so that night we made merry, and drunke to the thrée Kings, and therewith we had two pound of meale, wherof we made pancakes with oyle, and euery man a white bisket, which we sopt in wine: and so supposing that we were in our owne country, and amongst our frends, it comforted vs as well as if we had made a great banket in our owne house: and wè also made tickets, and our Gunner was king of Noua Zembla, which is at least two hundred miles long, and lyeth betwéene two seas.

The 6 of January, it was faire weather, the wind north-east, then we went out and clensed our Traps to take Fores, which were our Venison, and we digd a great hole in the snow, where our fire-wood lay, and left it close aboue like a vault; & from thence fetcht out our wood as we nèeded it.

The 7. of January, it was foule weather againe, with a North west wind, and some snow, and very cold, which put vs in great feare to be shut vp in the house againe.

The 8. of January, it was faire weather againe, the wind North: then we made our Springes ready to get more Venison: which we longed for, and then we might sée and marke day-light, which then began to increase, that the Sunne as then began to come towards vs againe, which put vs in no litle comfort.

The 9. of January, it was foule wether, with a North-west wind, but not so hard wether as it had bin before, so ỹ we might go

out of the ooze, to make cleane our Springes, but it was no néed to bid vs goe home againe, for the cold taught vs by experience not to stay long out, for it was not so warm to get any good by staying in the aire.

The 10. of January, it was faire weather, with a North-wind: then seuen of vs went to our ship, well armed, which we found in the same state we left it in, and in we saw many foote steps of Beares, both great and small, whereby it séemed that there had bin more then one or two Beares therein; and as we went vnder hatches, we strooke fire, and lighted a candle, and found that the water was rysen a foote higher in the ship.

The 11. of January, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the cold began to be somewhat lesse, so that as then we were bold to goe out of the oozes, and went about a quarter of a mile to a hill, from whence we fetched certaine stones, which we layd in the fire, therewith to warme vs in our Tabans.

The 12. of January, it was faire cleare weather, the wind North-west: that euening it was very cleare, and the skie full of Starres, then we toke the height of Occulus Tauri, which is a bright and well knowne Star, & we found it to be eleuated aboue ỳ Horison twenty nine degrées and fifty foure minuts, her declination being fifteene degrées, fifty foure minutes on the North side of the lyne. This declination being substracted from the height aforesaid, then there rested fourteene degrées, which substracted from ninety degrées, then the height of the pole was seuenty fiue degrées, and so by measuring the height of that starre, and some others we gest that ỳ Sun was in ths like height, and that we were there vnder seuenty fiue degrées, and rather higher then lower.

The 13. of January, it was faire still weather, the wind westerlie, and then we perceaued that day-light began more and more to increase, and wee went out and cast bullets at the bale of ỳ flag staffe, which before we could not sée when it turnd about.

The 14. of January, it was faire weather, and a cleare light, the wind Westerlie, and that day we toke a For.

The 15. of January, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, and six of vs went aboord the ship, where we found, the bolck-banger, (which the last time that we were in the ship, we stucke in a hole in the fore decke, to take Fores) puld out of the hole, and lay

in

in the middle of the ship, and al torne in péces by the Bears as we perceiued by their sote-steps.

The 16. of January, it was faire weather, the wind Northerly, and then we went now & then out of the house to strech out our ioynts and our limes with going and running, that we might not become lame, & about none time we saw a certaine rednes in the skie as a shew or messenger of the Sunne that began to come towards vs.

The 17. of January, it was cleare weather, with a North wind, and then still more and more wée perceiued that the Sun began to come neerer vnto vs, for the day was somewhat warmer, so that when wee had a good fire, there fell great péces of Ice downe from the walles of our house, and the Ice melted in our cabens, and the water dropt downe, which was not so before, how great soeuer our fire was, but that night it was cold againe.

The 18. of January, it was faire cleare weather, with a Southeast wind, then our wood began to consume, & so we agréed to burne some of our sea-coles, and not to stop vp the chimney, and then wée should not néede to feare any hurt, which wée did, and found no disease thereby, but we thought it better for vs to kéepe the coles, and to burne our wood more sparingly, for that the coles would serue vs better when we should saile home in our open Scute.

The 19. of January, it was faire weather, with a North wind, and then our bread began to diminish, for that some of our barrels were not full waight, & so the diuision was lesse, and we were forced to mak our allowance bigger with that which we had spared before: and then some of vs went aboard the ship, where as there was halfe a barrell of bread, which we thought to spare till the last, and there secretly each of them toke a bisket or two out of it.

The 20. of January, the ayre was cleare, and the wind southwest, that day we staied in the house, and cloue wood to burne, and make some of our emptie barrels, and cast the Iron hoopes vpon the top of the house.

The 21. of January, it was faire weather, with a West wind: at that time taking of Fores began to faile vs, which was a signe that the Beares would sone come againe, as not long after we

found

found it to be true, for as long as the Beares stay away, the Fores came abroad, and not much before the Beares come abroad, the Fores were but little seene.

The 22. of January, it was faire wether with a West wind: then we went out againe to cast the bullet, and perceiued that day light began to appeare, whereby some of vs said, that the Sun would sone appeare vnto vs, but William Barents to the contrary said, that it was yet two weeks too sone.

The 23. of January, it was faire calme weather, with a South-west-wind: then foure of vs went to the ship, and comforted each other, giuing God thankes, that the hardest time of the winter was past, being in good hope that we should liue to talke of those things at home in our owne country: and when we were in the ship, we found that the water rose higher and higher in it, and so each of vs taking a bisket or two with vs, we went home againe.

The 24. of January, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind: then I, and Iacob Hemskecke, and another with vs went to the sea side, on the South side of Noua Zembla, where contrary to our expectation, I first saw the edge of the Sun, where with we went spedily home againe, to tell Willam Barents and the rest of our companions that ioyfull newes: but William Barents being a wise and well experienced pilot, would not beleeue it, esteeming it to be about fourteene daies too sone, for the Sunne to shin in that part of the world, but we earnestly affirmed the contrary, and said that we had seene the Sunne.

The 25. & 26. of January it was misty, and close weather, so y̆ we could not see anything: then they that layd y̆ contrary wager w̄ vs, thought that they had won, but vpon the twenty seuen day it was cleare weather, and then we saw the Sunne in his full roundnesse aboue the Horison, whereby it manifestly appeared that we had seene it vpon the twenty foure day of January. And as we were of diuers opinions touching the same, and that we said it was cleane contrary to the opinions of all olde and newe writers, yea and contrary to the nature and roundnesse both of Heauen and Earth; some of vs said, that seeing in long time there had been no day, that it might be that we had ouerslept our selues, whereof we were better assured: but concerning the thing in it

How the Sun which they had lost the 4. of Nouember did appere to them again vpon the

selfe,

selfe, seeing God is wonderfull in all his workes, we will referre that to his almightie power, and leaue it vnto others to dispute of, but for that no man shall thinke vs to be in doubt thereof, if we should let this passe without discoursing vpon it, therefore we will make some declaration thereof, whereby we may assure our selues that we kept good reckening.

24. of Ianuary which was very strange, and cõtrary to all learned mens opinions.

You must vnderstand, that when we first saw the Sunne, it was in the fift degree and 25. minutes of Aquarius, and it should haue staied according to our first gessing, till it had entred into the sixteenth degree and 27. minutes of Aquarius, before he should haue shewed there vnto vs, in the higth of 76. degrees.

Which we striuing and contending about it, amongst our selues, we could not be satisfied, but wondred thereat, and amongst vs were of opinion, that we had mistaken our selues, which neuertheless, we could be persuaded vnto, for that euery day, without faile we noted what had past, and also had vsed our clocke continually, and when that was frosen, we vsed our houre-glasse of 12. houres long, whereupon we argued with our selues, in diuers wise, to know how we should finde out that difference, and leaue the truth of the time, which to trie we agreed to loke into the Ephemerides made by Iosephus Schala, printed in Venice, for the yeeres of our Lord 1589. till a 1600. and we found therein, that vpon the 24. day of January, (when the Sunne first appeared vnto vs) that at Venice the clocke being one in the night time, the Mone and Iupiter were in coniunction, whereupon we sought to knowe when the same coniunction should be ouer or about the house where we then were, and at last we found, ỹ the 24. day of January was the same day, whereon the coniunctiõ aforesaid happened in Venice, at one of the clocke in the night, & with vs in the morning, when ỹ Sun was in the east: for we saw manifestly, that the two Planets afore said, approached neere vnto each other, vntill such time as the Mone & Iupiter stod one iust ouer the other, both in the signe of Taurus, and that was at six of the clocke in the morning, at which time the Mone and Iupiter were found by our Compas to be in coniunction, ouer our house, in the North and by east point, & the South part of the Compas was south-south-west, and there we had it right south, the Mone being eight daies old, whereby it appeareth, that the

Sunne and the Wone were eight points different, and this was about fiue of the clocke in the morning: this place differeth from Venice fiue houres in longitude, whereby we maye gesse how much we were nearer east then the Citie of Venice, which was fiue houres, each houre being 15. degrées, which is in all 75. degrées, that we were more easterly then Venice, by all which it is manifestly to be seene, that we had not failed in our account, and that also we had found our right longitude, by the two Planets afore said, for the towne of Venice lieth vnder 37. degrées and 25. minutes in longitude, and her declination is 46. degrées and 5. minutes, whereby it followeth that our place of Noua Zembla, lieth vnder 112. degrées and 25. minutes in longitude, and the high of the Pole 76. degrées, and so you haue the right longitude & latitude, but frõ the vttermost point of Noua Zembla, to ỹ point of Cape de Tabin, the vttermost point of Tartaria, where it windeth southward: The longitude differeth 60. degrées, but you must vnderstand, that the degrées are not so great, as they are vnder the Equinoctial line, for right vnder the line a degrée is fifteene miles, but when you leaue the line, either northward or southward, then the degrées in longitude do lessen, so that the nérer that a man is to the North or South Pole, so much the degrées are lesse: so that vnder the 76. degrées northward, where wee wintered, the degrées are but 3. miles, and $\frac{2}{3}$ parts, whereby it is to be marked, that we had but 60. degrées to saile to the said Cape de Tabin, which is 220. miles, so the said Cape lieth in 172. degrées in longitude as it is thought: and being aboue it, it séemeth that we should be in the straight of Anian, where we may saile bouldlie into the South, as the land reacheth: Now what further instructions are to be had to know where we lost the sun vnder ỹ said 76. degrées vpon the fourth of Nouember, & saw it againe vpon the 24. of January: I leaue that to be described, by such as make profession thereof, it sufficeth vs to haue shewed, that it failed vs not to appeare at the ordinary time.

The 25. of January, it was darke clowdy weather, the wind westerlie, so that the séeing of the Sunne the day before, was againe doubted of, and then many wagers were laid, and we still lookt out to sée if the Sunne appeared, the same day we sawe a Beare, (which as long as the Sunne appeared not vnto vs we

sawe

saw not) comming out of the south west towards our house, but when we shouted at her she came no nærer, but went away againe.

The 26. of Januarie, it was faire clære weather, but in the Horrison there hung a white or darke cloude, whereby we could not sæ the Sun, whereupon the rest of our companions, thought that we had mistaken our selues vpon the 24. day, and that the Sunne appeared not vnto vs, and mocked vs, but we were resolute in our former affirmation, that we had sæne the Sunne, but not in the full round nesse: That euening the sicke man that was amongst vs, was very weake, and felt him selfe to be extreame sicke, for he had laine long time, and we comforted him as well as we might, & gaue him the best admonition ý we could, but he died not long after midnight.

The 27. of Januarie it was faire clære weather, with a south west winde, then in the morning we digd a hole in the snowe, hard by the house, but it was still so extreame cold, that we could not stay long at worke, and so we digd by turnes euery man a little while, and then went to the fire, and an other went and supplyed his place, till at last we digd seauen foote depth, wherewe went to burie the dead man, after that when we had read certaine chapters and sung some Psalmes, we all went out and buried the man, which done we went in and brake our fasts, and while we were at meate, and discoursed amongst our selues, touching the great quantitie of snowe that continually fell in that place, wee said that if it fell out, that our house should be closed vp againe with snowe, we would find the meanes to climbe out at the chimney, whereupon our master went to trie if he could clime vp through the chimney, and so get out, and while he was climbing one of our men went forth of the doore, to sée if the master were out or not, who standing vpon the snowe, saw the Sunne, and called vs all out, wherewith we all went forth and saw the Sunne in his full roundnesse, a little aboue the horrison, and then it was without all doubt, that we had sæne the Sunne vpon the 24. of Januarie, which made vs all glad, and we gaue God hearty thankes, for his grace shewed vnto vs, that that glorious light appeared vnto vs againe.

The 28. of January, it was faire weather, with a west wind, then

then we went out many tymes to exercise our selues, by going, running, casting of the ball, (for then we might see a good way from vs) and to refresh our ioynts, for we had long time sitten dull, whereby many of vs were very loase.

The 29 of January, it was foule weather with great store of snow, the wind North-west, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow.

The 30. of January, it was darke weather, with an East-wind, and we made a hole through the doze, but we shoueled not the, snow very farre from the portaile, for that as sone as we saw what weather it was, we had no desire to goe abroad.

The 31. of January, it was faire calme weather, with an East-wind, then we made the doze cleane, and shoueled away the snow, and threw it vpon the house, and went out, and we saw not the Sun shine cleare, which comforted vs, meane time we saw a Beare, that came towards our house, but we went softly in, and watcht for her till she came nérer, and as sone she was hard by we shot at her, but she ran away againe.

The 1. of Februarv, being Candlemas eue, it was boisterous weather, with a great storme and good store of snow, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow, and we were constrained to stay within doores, the wind then being North-west,

The 2. of Februarv, it was foule weather, and as then the Sun had not rid vs of all the foule weather, whereby we were some what discomforted, for that being in good hope of better weather we had not made so great prouision of wood as wee did before.

The 3. of Februarv, it was faire weather, with an Eastwinde, but very misty, whereby we could not sée the Sun, which made vs somewhat melancholy, to sée so great a misse, and rather more then we had had in the winter time, and then we digd our doze, open againe, and fetcht the wood that lay without about the doze into the house, which we were forced with great paine and labour to dig out of the snow.

The 4. of Februarv, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind being South-west, and then we were close vpagaine with snow, but then we toke not so much paines as we did before, to dig open the doze, but when we had occasion to goe out

we

we clomich out at the chimney, and eased our selues, and went in gaine the same way.

The 5. of Februarie it was still foule weather, the wind being East, with great store of snow, whereby we were shut vp againe into the house, and had no other way to get out but by the chimney, and those that could not climeb out, were faine to helpe themselues within as well as they could.

The 6. of Februarie it was still foule stormie weather, with store of snow, and we still went out at the chimney, (and troubled not our selues with the doore,) for some of vs made it an easie matter to clime out at the chimney.

The 7. of Februarie, it was stil foule weather, with much snow and a South-west wind, and we thereby forced to keepe the house, which grieued vs more then when the Sun shined not, for that hauing seen it and felt the heat thereof, yet we were forced not to inioy it.

The 8. of Februarie, it began to be fairer weather, the wind being South-west, thē we saw the Sun rise South South-east, and went downe South, South-west, by ẏ compas that we had made of lead, and placed according to the righ tmeridian of that place, but by our common compas, it differed. three points.

The 9. of Februarie, it was faire cleare weather, the wind South-west, but as then we could not see the Sunne, because it was close weather in the South, where the Sunne should goe downe.

The 10, of Februarie, it was faire cleare weather, so that we could not tell where the wind blew, and thē we began to feele some heat of the Sunne, but in the euening it began to blow somewhat cold out of the west.

The 11. of Februarie, it was faire weather, the wind South, ẏ day about none, there came a Beare towards our house, and we watcht her with our Muskets, but she came not so neere that we could reach her, the same night we heard some Fores stirring, which since the beares began to come abroad againe, we had much seen.

The 12. of Februarie, it was cleare weather and very calme, the wind South-west, then we made our traps cleane againe, meane time there came a great Beare towards our house, which

made vs all goe, in and we leauelled at her with our muskets, and as she caue right before our doze, we shot her into the breast, clean through the heart, the bullet passing through her body and went out againe at her tayle, and was as flat as a counter. the Beare feeling the blow, lept backwards and ran twenty or thirty foote from the house, and there lay downe, wherewith we lept all out of the house and ran to her, and found her stil aliue, and when she saw vs, she reard vp her head, as if she would gladly haue done vs some mischefe, but we trusted her not, for that we had tryed her strength sufficiently before, and therefore we shot their twice into the body againe, and therewith she dyed, then we ript vp her belly, and taking out her guts drew her home to the house, where we flead her, and toke at least one hundred pound of fat out of her belly, which we molt, and burnt in our Lampe. This grease did vs great good seruice, for by that meanes we stil kept a Lampe burning all night long, which before we could not doe, for want of grease, and euery man had meanes to burne a Lamp in his Caban, for such necessaries as he had to doe. The Beares skin was nine foote long, and 7 foote broad.

The 13 of February, it was faire cleare weather with a hard West wind, at which time we had more light in our house by burning of Lamps, whereby we had meanes to passe the time away, by reading and other exercises, which before (when we could not distinguish day from night, by reason of the darkneſſe, and had not Lamps continually burning) we could not doe.

The 14. of February. it was faire cleere weather, with a hard west wind before none, but after none, it was still weather. then fiue of vs went to the ship, to see how it laie, and found the water to encrease in it, but not much.

The 15. of February, it was foule weather, with a great storme out of the south-west, with great store of snowe, whereby the house was closed vp againe, that night the Fores came to deuoure the dead body of the Beare, whereby we were in great feare, that all the Beares thereabouts, would come theather, and therefore we agréed, as sone as we could to get out of the house to bury the dead Beare déepe vnder the snowe.

The 16. of February, it was still foule weather with great store of snowe, & a south-west wind, that day was Shroue-twes-

day

day, then wee made our selues some what merry in our great griefe and trouble, and euery one of vs dranke a draught of wine in remembrance that winter began to weare away, and faire weather to approache.

The 17. of February, it was still foule weather and a darke sky, the wind South, then we opened our doze againe, and swept away the snow, and then we threw the dead Beare into the hoale where we had digd out some wood, and stopt it vp, that the Beares by smelling it, should not come thither to trouble vs, and we set vp our springs againe to take Fores, and the same day fiue of vs went to the ship, to see how it laie, which we found all after one sort, there we found foote-steps of many Beares, as though they had taken it vp for their lodging, when we had forsaken it.

The 18. of February, it was foule weather with much snow and very cold, the wind being south-west, and in the night time as we burnt lampes, and some of our men laie awake, we heard beasts runne vpon the roofe of our house, which by reason of the snowe, made the noise of their feete sound more then otherwise it would haue done, the snow was so hard, whereby we thought they had beene Beares, but when it was day, we sawe no foting but of Fores, and we thought they had beene Beares, for the night which of it selfe is solitarie and fearefull, made that which was doubtfull to be more doubtfull and worse feared.

The 19. of February it was faire cleere weather, with a south-west wind, then we toke the hight of the Sunne, which in long time before we could not doe, because the Horizon was not cleere as also for that it mounted not so high, nor gaue not so much shadowe, as we were to haue in our Astrolabium, and therefore we made an instrument, that was halfe round, at the one end hauing 90. degrees marked thereon, whereon we hung a thrid with a Plumet of lead, as the water compasses haue, and therewith we toke the hight of the Sunne, when it was at the highest, and found that it was three degrees eleuated aboue the Horizon, his declination eleuenth degrees and sixteene minutes, which beeing added to the hight aforesaid made, 14. degrees 16. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there rested 75. degrees and 44. minutes for the higth of the Pole, but the aforesaid three degrees of higth, being taken at the lowest side of the Sunne, the

16. minutes might well be added to the higth of the Pole, and so it was iust 76. degrées, as we had measured it before.

The 20. of Februarv, it was foule weather with great store of snow, the wind south-west, whereby we were shut vp againe in the house, as we had bene often times before.

The 21. of Februarv, it was still foule weather, the wind north-west, and great store of snow, which made vs greiue more then it did before, for we had no more wood, & so were forced to breake of some peces of wood in the house, and to gather vp some that lay troden vnder feet, which had not bin cast out of the way, whereby for that day and the next night we holp our selues indifferent well.

The 22 of Februarv it was clere faire weather, with a South-west wind, then we made ready a sled to fetch more wood, for need compelled vs thereunto, for as they say hunger driueth the Wolfe out of his den, and eleuen of vs went together, all well appointed with our armes, but coming to the place where wee should haue the wood, we could not come by it, by reason it laie so deepe vnder the snow, whereby of necessitie we were compelled to goe further, where with great labour and trouble we got some: but as we returned backe againe therewith, it was so sore labour vnto vs that we were almost out of comfort, for that by reason of the long cold and trouble that we had indured, we were become so weake & feeble, that we had litle strength, & we began to be in doubt, that we should not recouer our strengths againe, and should not be able to fetch any more wood, and so we should haue died with cold, but the present necessitie, and the hope we had of better weather, increased our forces, and made vs doe more then our strengthes afforded, and when we came neere to our house, we sawe much open water in the Sea, which in long time we had not seene, which also put vs in good comfort, that things would be better.

The 23. of Februarv, it was calme and faire weather, with a good aire, the wind south-west, and then we toke two Fores, that were as good to vs as venison.

The 25. of Februarv, it was still weather, and a close aire, the wind south-west, then we dreft our springes in good sort, for the Fores, but toke none.

The 25, of Februarv, it was foule weather againe, and much

snow.

with a North wind, whereby we were closed vp with snow againe, and could not get out of our house.

The 26. of February, it was darke weather, with a south-west wind, but very calme, and then we opened our dore againe, and exercised our selues with going and running, and to make our ioints supple, which were almost clinged together.

The 27. of February, it was calme weather, with a South wind, but very cold, then our wood began to lessen, which put vs in no small discomfort, to remember what trouble we had to draw the last slead-full home, and we must doe the like againe, if we would not die with cold.

The 28. of February, it was still weather with a south-west wind, then ten of vs went and fetcht and other slead-full of wood, with no lesse paine and labor then we did before, for one of our companions could not helpe vs, because that the first ioint of one of his great toes was frozen of, and so he could doe nothing.

The first of March, it was faire still weather, the wind west, but very cold, and we were forced to spare our wood, because it was so great labor for vs to fetch it, so that when it was day, we exercised our selues as much as we might, with running, going, and leaping, and to them that laie in their Cabins, we gaue hote stones to warme them, and towards night we made a good fire, which we were forced to indure.

The 2. of Marche, it was cold cléere weather, with a West wind, the same day we tooke the higth of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon sixe degrées and 48. minutes, and his declination was 7. degrées and 12. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrées, resteth 76. degrees for the higth of the Pole.

The 3. of March, it was faire weather with a West wind, at which time our sickemen were somewhat better, and sat vpright in their Cabins, to doe some thing to passe the time awaie, but after they found that they were too ready to stirre before their times.

The 4. of March, it was faire weather with a West wind, the same day there came a Beare to our house, whom we watcht wͤ our péeces, as we did before, and shot at her & hit her, but sherun away, at that time fiue of vs went to our ship, where we found that the Beares had made worke, & had opened our Cookes cub-

berd, that was couered ouer with snow, thinking to finde some thing in it, and had drawne it out of the ship where we found it.

The 5. of March, it was foule weather againe, with a south-west wind, and as in the euening we had digd open our doze and went out, when the weather began to breake vp, we saw much open water in the Sea, more then before, which put vs in good comfort, that in the end we should get away from thence.

The 6. of March, it was foule weather, with a great storme out of the south-west, and much snow, the same day some of vs climbed out of the chimney, and perceaued that in the Sea, and about the land there was much open water, but the ship lay fast still.

The 7. of March, it was still foule weather and as great a wind, so that we were shut vp in our house, and they that would goe out, must clime vp through the chimney, which was a common thing with vs, and still we sawe more open water in the Sea, and about the land, whereby we were in doubt that the ship in that foule weather and driuing of the Ice, would be loose (for as then the Ice drawe) while we were shut vp in our house, and we should haue no meanes to helpe it.

The 8. of March, it was still foule weather, with a south-west storme, and great store of snow, whereby we could see no Ice in the north-east, nor round about in the Sea, whereby we were of opinion that north-east from vs, there was a great Sea.

The 9. of March it was foule weather, but not so foule as the day before, and lesse snow, and then we could see further from vs, and perceiue that the water was open in the north-east, but not from vs towards Tartaria, for there we could still see Ice in the Tartarian Sea, otherwise called the Ice Sea, so that we were of opinion, that there it was not very wide, for when it was clere weather, we thought many times that we saw the land, and sholved it vnto our companions, south and south-east from our house, like a hilly land, as land commonly sholveth it selfe, when we see it.

The 10. of March, it was clere weather, the wind North, then we made our house cleane, and digd our selues out, and came forth, at which time we saw an open Sea, whereupon we said vnto each other, that if the ship were lose, we might venture to

saile

saile alwaie, for we were not of opinion to doe it with our Scutes, considering the great cold that we found there: towards euening, nine of vs went to the ship with a slead to fetch wood, when al our wood was burnt, and found the ship in the same order that it laie and fast in the Ice.

The 11. of March, it was cold, but faire sunne-shine weather, the wind north-east, then we toke the higth of the Sunne, with our Astrolabium, and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon ten degrées and 19. minutes, his declination was three degrées 41. minutes, which being added to the higth aforesaid, made 14. degrées, which substracted from 90. degrées, there resteth 76. degrées for the higth of the Pole: then twelue of vs went to the place where we vsed to goe, to fetch a slead of wood, but still we had more paine and labour therewith, because we were weaker, and when we came home with it and were very weary we prayd the master to giue either of vs a draught of wine, which he did, wherewith we were somewhat relæued, & comforted, and after that were the willinger to labour, which was vnsupportable for vs, if mere extremitie had not compelled vs thereunto, saying often times one vnto the other, that if the wood were to be bought for mony, we would giue all our earnings, or wages for it.

The 12 of March, it was foule weather, ỹ wind north-east, then the Ice came mightily driuing in, which the south-west winde had bin driuen out, and it was then as could, as it had bin before in the coldest time of winter.

The 13. of March, it was still foule weather, with a storme out of the North-east, and great store of snow, and the Ice mightely driuing in with a great noyse, the flakes rustling against each other fearfull to heare.

The 14. of March, it was still foule weather with a great east North-east wind, wherby the sea was as close as it had bin before, and it was extreame cold, whereby our sicke men were very ill, who when it was faire weather, were stirring too some.

The 15. of march, it was faire weather, the wind North, that day we opened our doze to goe out, but the cold rather increased then diminished, and was bitterer then before it had bin.

The 16 of March, it was faire cleare weather, but extreame cold with a North wind, which put vs to great extremity, for that

we had almost taken our leaues of the cold, and then it began to come againe.

The 17. of March it was faire cleare weather, with a North-wind, but still very cold, wherby wée were wholy out of comfort, to see and feele so great cold, and knew not what to thinke, for it was extreame cold.

The 18. of March, it was foule cold weather, with good store of snow the wind North-east, which shut vs vp in our house, so that we could not get out.

The 19. of March, it was still foule and bitter cold weather, the wind North-east, the Ice in the sea cleauing faster and thicker together, with great cracking, and a hugh noyse, which we might easily heare in our house, but we delighted not much in hearing thereof.

The 20. of March, it was foule weather, bitter cold, and a North-east wind, then our wood began to consume, so that we were forced to take counsell together, for without wood we could not liue, and yet we began to be so weake, that we could hardly endure the labour to fetch it.

The 21. of March, it was faire weather, but still very cold, the wind North the same day the Sunne entred into Aries, in the equinoctiall lyne, and at noone we toke the hight of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated 14. degrées aboue the Horizon, but for that the Sun was in the middle lyne, and of the like distance from both the tropiks, there was no declination, neither on the South nor north side, and so the 14. degrées aforesaid being substracted, from ninty degrées, there rested 76 degrées for the hight of the Pole. The same day, we made shoes of felt or rudg, which we drew vpon our fèet, for we could not goe in our shoes, by reason of the great cold, for the shoes on our fèet were as hard as hornes, and then we fetcht a slead-ful of wood home to our house, with sore and extreame labour, and with great extremity of cold which we endured, as if March went to bid vs farewell, for our hope and comfort was that the cold could not still continue in that force, but that at length the strength thereof would be broken.

The 22. of March, it was cléere still weather, the wind North-east, but very cold, whereupon some of vs were of aduice, séeing that the fetching of wood was so toylsome vnto vs, that euery day

once

once we should make a fire of coales.

The 23. of March, it was very foule weather, with infernall bitter cold, the wind North-east, so that we were forced to make more fire, as we had bin at other times, for then it was as cold as euer it had bin, and it froze very hard in the doore and vpon the wales of our house.

The 24. of March, it was a like cold, with great store of snow, and a North wind, whereby we were once againe shut vp into the house, and then the coalls serued vs well, which before by reason of our bad vsing of them, we disliked of.

The 25. of March, it was still foule weather, the wind west, the cold still holding as strong as it was: which put vs in much discomfort.

The 26. of March, it was faire cléere weather, and very calme, then we digd our selues out of the house againe, and went out, & then we fetcht an other stead of wood, for the great cold had made vs burne vp all that we had.

The 27. of March, it was faire weather, the wind west and very calme, then the Ice began to driue away againe, but the ship lay fast and stird not.

The 28. of March, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, whereby the Ice drawe away very fast. The same day fiue of vs went aboord the ship, to see how it lay, and found it still in one sort; but we perceiued that the Beares had kept an euil fauoured house therein.

The 29. of March, it was faire cléere weather, with a North-east wind, then the Ice came driuing in againe, the same day we fecht another stead of wood, which we were euery day worse alike to doe, by reason of our weakneste.

The 30. of March, it was faire cléere weather, with an East wind, wherwith the Ice came driuing in againe; after noone there came two Beares by our house, but they went along to the ship, and let vs alone.

The 31. of March, it was still faire weather, the wind North-east, where with the Ice came still more and more driuing in, and made high hilles by sliding one vpon the other.

The 1. of Aprill, it blew stil out of the East, with faire weather

but very cold, and then we burnt some of our coales, for that our wood was too troublesome for vs to fetch.

The 2. of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind north-east and very calme, then we toke the higth of the Sunne and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 18. degrées and 40. minutes, his declination being foure degrées and 40. minutes, which being substracted from the higth aforesaid, there rested 14. degrées, which taken from 90. degrées, the higth of the Pole was 76. degrées.

The 3. of Aprill it was faire clére weather, with a north-east wind, and very calme, then we made a staffe to plaie at colfe, thereby to stretch our Iointes, which we sought by all the meanes we could to doe.

The 4. of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind variable, that daie we went all to the ship and put out the cable that was made fast to the anchor, to the end that if the ship chanced to be lose, it might hold fast thereby.

The 5. of Aprill it was foule weather, with a hard north-east wind, wherewith the Ice came mightily in againe, and slid in great péces one vpon the other, and then the ship laie faster then it did before.

The 6. of Aprill, it was still foule weather, with a stiffe north-west wind, that night there came a Beare to our house, and we did the best we could to shoot at her, but because it was moist weather, & the cocke foistie, our pére would not giue fire, wherewith the Beare came bouldly toward the house, and came downe the staires close to the doore, seeking to breake in to the house, but our master held the doore fast to, & being in great haste and feare, could not barre it with the pére of wood that we vsed thereunto, but the Beare séeing that the doore was shut, she went backe againe, and within two houres after she came againe, and went round about and vpon the top of the house, and made such a roaring, that it was fearefull to heare, and at last got to the chimney, and made such worke there, that we thought she would haue broken it downe, and tore the saile that was made fast about it in many péces, with a great and fearefull noise, but for that it was night we made no resistance against her, because we could not sée her, at last she went awaie and left vs.

The

The 7. of Aprill, it was foule weather, the wind south-west, then we made our muskets ready, thinking the Beare would haue come againe, but she came not, then we went vp vpon the house, where we saw what force the Beare had vsed, to teare away the saile, which was made so fast vnto the chimney.

The 8. of Aprill, it was still foule weather, the wind south-west, whereby the Ice draue away againe, and the Sea was open, which put vs in some comfort, that we should once get away out of that fearefull place.

The 9. of Aprill, it was faire cléere weather, but towards euening it was foule weather, the wind South-west, so that stil ỹ water became opener, whereat we much reioyced, and gaue God thanks, that he had saued vs from the aforesaid cold, troublesome, hard, bitter, and vnsupportable Winter, hoping that time would giue vs a happy issue.

The 10. of Aprill, it was foule weather, with a storme out of the North-east, with great store of snowe, at which time the Ice, that draue away, came in againe, and couered all the sea ouer.

The 11. of Aprill, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, wherewith the Ice still draue one péece vpon another, and lay in high hilles.

The 21. of Aprill, it was faire cléere weather, but still it blew hard North-east, as it had done two dayes before, so that the Ice lay like hilles one vpon the other, and then was higher and harder then it had bin before.

The 13. of Aprill, it was faire cléere weather, with a North wind, the same day we fetcht a dead with wood, & euery man put on his shoes, that he had made of felt or rudg, which did vs great pleasure.

The 14. of Aprill, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, then we saw greater hilles of Ice round about the ship, then euer we had séene before, which was a fearefull thing to behold, and much to be wondred at, that the ship was not smitten in péeces.

The 15. of Aprill, it was faire calme weather with a North wind, then seauen of vs went aboard the ship, to sée in what case it was, and found it to be all in one sort, and as we came backe againe, there came a great Beare towards vs, against whom we began

began to make defence, but she perceauing that, made away from vs, and we went to the place from whence she came, to see her den, where we found a great hole made in ẏ Ice, about a mãs lenght in depth, the entry thereof being very narrow, and with in, wide, there we thrust in our pickes to fœle if there was any thing within it, but perceauing it was emptie, one of our men crept into it, but not too farre, for it was fearefull to behold, after that we went along by the Sea side, and there we saw, that in the end of March, and the begining of Aprill the Ice was in such wondefull maner risen and piled vp one vpon the other, that it was wonderfull in such manner as if there had bin whole townes made of Ice, with towres and bulwarkes round about them.

The 16. of Aprill it was foule weather, the wind north-west, whereby the Ice began some-what to breake.

The 17. of Aprill it was faire clere weather, with a south-west wind, and then seauen of vs went to the ship, and there we saw open water in the Sea, and then we went ouer the Ice-hilles as well as we could to the water, for in six or seauen monthes we had not gone so neare vnto it, and when we got to ẏ water, there we saw a litle bird swiming therein, but as sone as it espied vs, it dived vnder the water, which we toke for a signe that there was more open water in the Sea, then there had bene before, and that the time approached that the water would open.

The 18. of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind south-west, then we toke the higth of the Sunne, and it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 25. degrees and 10. minutes, his declination 11. degrees and 12. minutes, which being taken from the higth aforesaid, there rested 13. degrees and 58. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrees, the higth of the Pole was found to be 75. degrees, 58. minutes; then eleuen of vs went with a sled to fetch more wood, and brought it to the house: in the night there came as other Beare vpon our house, which we hearing, went all out with our armes, but the Beare ranne away.

The 19. of Aprill it was faire weather with a North wind, that day fiue of vs went into the bath, to bathe our selues, which did vs much good, and was a great refreshing vnto vs.

The 20. of Aprill, it was faire weather with a West wind, the same day fiue of vs went to the place where we fetcht wood,

with

with a kettle & other furniture vpon a sleed, to wash our shirts in that place, because the wood lay ready there, and for that we were to vse much wood to melt the Ice, to heate our water, and to drie our shirtes, esteeming it a lesse labour, then to bring the wood home to the house which was great trouble vnto vs.

The 21. of Aprill it was faire weather, with an East wind, and the next day the like weather, but in the euening the wind blewe northerly.

The 23. of Aprill, it was faire weather, and a north-east wind, and the next day the like, with an East wind.

The 25. of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind easterly, the same day there came a Beare to our house, and we shot her into the skin, but she runne awaie, which another Beare that was not farre from vs perceauing runne alway also.

The 26. and 27. of Aprill it was faire weather, but an extréme great north-east wind.

The 28. of Aprill it was faire weather, with a North wind, then we toke the higth of the Sunne againe, and found it to be eleuated 28. degrées and 8. minutes, his declination 14. degrées and 8. minutes, which subtracted from 90. degrées, there rested 76. degrées for the highth of the Pole.

The 29. of Aprill it was faire weather, with a south-west wind, then we plaid at colfe, both to the ship, and from thence agains homeward, to exercise our selues.

The 30. of Aprill it was faire weather, the wind south-west, then in the night we could see the Sunne in the North (when it was in the highest) iust aboue the Horizon, so that from that time we saw the Sunne both night and day.

The 1. of May, it was faire weather with a West wind, then we sod our last flesh, which for a long time we had spared, and it was still very good, and the last morsell tasted as well as the first, and we found no fault therein, but onely that it would last no longer.

The 2. of May, it was foule weather, with a storme out of the south-west, whereby the Sea was almost cléere of Ice, and then we began to speake about getting from thence, for we had kept house long enough there.

The 3. of May it was still foule weather, with a south-west

wind, whereby the Ice began wholy to driue away, but it lay fast about the ship, and when our best meate, as flesh, and other things began to faile vs, which was our greatest sustenance, and that it behoued vs to be somewhat strong, to sustaine the labour that we were to vndergoe, when we went from thence, the master shared the rest of the Bacon amongst vs, which was a small barrell with salt Bacon in pickle, whereof euery one of vs had two ounces a day, which continued for the space of three weekes, and then it was eaten vp.

The 4. of May it was indifferent faire weather, ỳ wind south-west, that day fiue of vs went to the ship, and found it lying still as fast in the Ice as it did before, for about the midle of March it was but 75. paces from the open water, and then it was 500. paces from the water, and inclosed round about with high hilles of Ice, which put vs in no small feare, how we should bring our Scute and our boate through or ouer that way into the water: when we went to leaue that place, that night there came a Beare to our house, but as soone as she heard vs make a noise, she ranne away againe, one of our men that climbed vp in the chimney saw when she ranne away, so that it seemed that as then they were afraid of vs, and durst not be so bold to set vpon vs, as they were at the first.

The 5. of May, it was faire weather, with some snow, the wind East, that euening, and at night we saw the Sunne when it was at the lowest, a good way aboue the Earth.

The 6. of May, it was faire cleere weather, with a great south-west wind, whereby we saw the Sea open both in the East and in the West, which made our men exceeding glad, longing fore to be gone from thence.

The 7. of May, it was foule weather, and snew hard, with a North wind, whereby we were closed vp againe in our house, whereupon our men were somewhat disquieted, saying that they thought they should neuer goe from thence, and therefore said they, it is best for vs as soone as it is open water to be gone from hence.

The 8. of May, it was foule weather, with great store of snow, the wind West, then some of our men agreed amongst themselues to speake vnto the master, and to tell him that it was more

then

then time for vs to be gone from thence, but they could not agree vpon it, who should moue the same vnto him, because he had said that he would staie vntill the end of June, which was the best of the sommer, to see if the ship would then be lose.

The 9. of May, it was faire clere weather, w̃ an indifferent wind out of the north-east, at which time the desire that our men had to be gone from thence, still more and more encreased, and then they agreed to speake to Willam Barents, to moue the master to goe from thence, but he held them of with faire words, and yet it was not done to delay them, but to take the best counsell, with reason and good aduise, for he heard all what they could saie.

The 10. of May, it was faire weather with a North-west wind, y night the Sun by our cõmon compas being North, North-east, and at the lowest, we toke the higth thereof, and it was eleuated 3 degrees and 45 minutes, his declination was 17 degrees and 45 minuts, from whence taking the higth aforesaid, there rested 14. degrees, which substracted from 90 degrees, there rested 76 degrees for the higth of the Pole.

The 11. of May, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, and then it was open water, in the sea, then our men prayed William Barents once againe to moue the Maister to make preparation to goe from thence, which he promised to do as sone as conuenient time serued him.

The 12. of May, it was foule weather, the wind North-west & then the water became still opener then it was, which put vs in good comfort.

The 13. of May, it was still weather, but it snowed hard with a North wind.

The 14. of May, we fetcht our last lead with fire wood, and stil ware our shoes made of rugde on our fete, wherewith we did our selues much pleasure, and they furthered vs much: at the same time we spake to Willam Barents againe, to moue the maister about going from thence, which he promised he would doe.

The 15. of May, it was faire weather, with a west wind and it was agreed that all our men should goe out, to exercise their bodies with running, goeing, playing at colfe and other exercises, thereby to stirre their ioynts and make them nymble, meane time Barents spake vnto the maister, and showed him what the com-

pany had said, who made him answeare that they should stay no longer then to the end of that Mounth, & that if then the ship could not be losed, that preparation should be made to goe away with the Scute and the boate.

The 16 of May, it was faire weather, with a West-wind at which time, the company were glad of the answere that the Maister had giuen, but they thought the time too long, because they were to haue much time to make the boate and the Scute ready to put to Sea with them, and therefore some of them were of opinion that it would be best for them to salue the boate in the middle, and to make it longer, which opinion thought it was not amisse, neuertheless it would be ỹ worse for vs, for that although it should be so much the better for the sailing, it would be so much the vnfitter to be drawne ouer the Ice, which we were forced to doe.

The 17. and 18, of May, it was faire cleere weather, with a West wind, and then we began to reconne the daies that were set downe and appointed for vs to make preparation to be gone.

The 19. of May it was faire weather with an East wind, then foure of our men went to the ship, or to the sea side, to see what way we should draue the Scute into the water.

The 20. of May, it was foule weather with a North-east wind, whereby the Ice began to come in againe, and at none we spake vnto the Maister, & told him that it was time to make preparation to be gon, if we would euer get away from thence, whereunto he made answeare, that his owne life was as deere vnto him, as any of ours vnto vs, neuertheless he willed vs to make haste to prepare our clothes, and other things ready and fit for our voiage, and that in the meane time we should patch and amend them, that after it might be no hinderance vnto vs, and that we should stay till the Mounth of May was past, and then make ready the Scute and the boate, and al other things fit and conuenient for our Journey.

The 21. of May, it was faire weather, with a North-east wind, so that the Ice came driuing in againe, yet we made preparation, touching our things that we should weare, that we might not be hindred thereby.

The 22. of May, it was faire weather, with a North-west wind,

and

and for that we had almost spent all our wood, we brake the portall of our doze downe and burnt it.

The 23. of May, it was faire weather with an East wind, then some of went againe to the place where the wood lay to wash our sheets.

The 24. of May, it was faire weather, with a South-east wind, whereby there was but a little open water.

The 25. of May, it was faire weather, with an East wind, then at none time we toke the higth of the Sunne, that was eleuated aboue the Horizon 34 degrées and 46 minutes, his declination 20 degrées and 46 minutes, which taken from the higth aforesaid, there rested 14 degrées, which taken from 90 degrées, rested 76 degrées, for the higth of the pole.

The 26. of May, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, whereby the Ice came in againe.

The 27. of May, it was foule weather, with a great North-east wind, which draue the Ice mightely in againe, whereupon the Maister at the motion of the company willed vs to make preparation to be gon.

The 28. of May, it was foule weather, with a North-west wind, after none it began to be somewhat better, then seuen of vs went vnto the ship, and fetcht such things from thence, as should serue vs for the furnishing of our Scute, and our boate, as the old fock sayle, to make a sayle for our boate, and our Scute, and some tackles, and other things necessarie for vs.

The 29. of May, in the morning, it was reasonable faire weather with a West wind, then ten of vs went vnto the Scute to bring it to the house to dresse it, and make it ready to sayle, but we found it deepe hidden vnder ỹ snow, & were faine with great paine and labour to dig it out, but when we had gotten it out of the snow, and thought to draw it to the house, we could not doe it, because we were too weake, wherewith we became wholely out of heart, doubting that we should not be able to goe forwarde with our labour, but the Maister encouraging vs, bad vs striue to doe more then we were able, saying that both our liues and our welfare consisted therein: and that if we could not get the Scute from thence, and make it ready, then he said we must dwell there as Burgers of Noua Zembla, and make our graues in that place. but

there wanted no good will in vs but onely strength, which made vs for that time to leaue of worke, and let the Scute lye stil, which was no small grefe vnto vs, and trouble to thinke what were best for vs to doe, but after noone being thus comfortlesse come home, we toke hearts againe and determined, to tourne the boate that lay by the house with her keale vpwards, & to amend it that it might be ỹ fitter to carry vs ouer the sea, for we made full accoũt ỹ we had a long troublesom voiage in hãd, wherin we might haue many crosses, and wherein we should not be sufficiently prouided, for all things necessarie, although we toke neuer so much care, and while we were busy about our worke, there came a great Beare vnto vs, wherewith we went into our house, and stood to watch her in our thre doores, with harquebushes, and one stood in the chimney with a Musket, this Beare came boldyer vnto vs then euer any had done before, for she came to the neather step ỹ went to one of our doores, and the man that stood in the doore saw her not, because he lokt towards the other doore, but they that stood within saw her, and in great feare called to him, wherewith he turned about, and although he was in a maze, he shot at her, and the bullet past cleane through her body, whereupon she ran away, yet it was a fearfull thing to see, for the Beare was almost vpon him before he saw her, so that if the pece had failed to giue fire, (as often times they doe) it had cost him his life, and it may be ỹ the Beare would haue gottẽ into ỹ house: the Beare being gone somewhat from the house lay downe, wherewith we went all armed and killed her out right, and when we had ript open her belly: we found a pece of a Bucke therein with haire skin and all, which not long before, she had towne and deuoured.

The 30. of May, it was indifferent faire weather, but very cold and close aire, the wind West, then we began to set our selues to worke about the boate to amend it, the rest staying in the house to make the sailes and all other things ready, that were necessarie for vs, but while we were busie working at our boate, there came a Beare vnto vs, wherewith we were forced to leaue worke, but she was shot by our men, then we brake downe the plankes of the roffe of our house, to amend our boate withall, and so proceeded in our worke as well as we could, for euery man was willing to labour, (for we had sore longed for it) and did

more

more then we were able to doe.

The 31. of May, it was faire weather, but somewhat colder then before, the wind being south-west, whereby the Ice drawe away, and we wrought hard about our boate, but when we were in the chiefest part of worke, there came an other Beare, as if they had smelt that we would be gone, and that therefore they desired to tast a peece of some of vs, for that was the third day, one after the other, that they set so fiercely vpon vs, so that we were forced to leaue our worke and goe into the house, and she followed vs, but we stood with our peeces to watch her, and shot three peeces at her, two from our doores, & one out of the chimney, which all three hit her, whereby she fared as the Dogge did with the pudding, but her death did vs more hurt then her life, for after we ript her belly, we drest her liuer and eate it, which in the taste liked vs well, but it made vs all sicke, specially three that were exceeding sicke, and we verily thought that we should haue lost them, for all their skins came of, from the sole to the head, but yet they recouered againe, for the which we gaue God hearty thankes, for if as then we had lost these three men, it was a hundred to one, that we should neuer haue gotten from thence, because we should haue had too few men to draw and lift at our neede.

The 1. of June, it was faire weather, and then our men were for the most part sicke with eating the liuer of a Beare, as it is said before, whereby that day there was nothing done about the boate, and then there hung a pot still ouer the fire with some of the liuer in it, but the master toke it, and cast it out of the doore, for we had enough of the sawce thereof: that day foure of our men, that were the best in health went to the ship, to see if there was any thing in it, that would serue vs in our voiage, and there found a barrell with geep, which we shared amongst our men, whereof euery one had two, and it did vs great pleasure.

The 2. of June, in the morning it was faire weather, with a south-west wind, and then fiue of vs went to see and finde out the best way, for vs to bring our boate and our Scute to the water side, for as then the Ice laie so high and so thicke one vpon the other, that it seemed vnpossible to draw, or get our boate and the Scute ouer the Ice, and the shortest and best way that we

could

could find was straight from the ship to the water side, although it was full of hilles and altogether vneuen, and would be great labour and trouble vnto vs, but because of the shortnesse, we esteemed it to be the best way for vs.

The 3. of June, in the morning it was faire cleare weather the wind West, and thē we were somewhat better, and toke great paines with the boate, that at last we got it ready, after we had wrought fiue daies vpon it: about euening it began to blow hard, and therewith the water was very open, which put vs in good comfort that our deliuerance would sone follow, & that we should once get out of that desolate, and fearefull place.

The 4. of June, it was faire clære weather, and indifferent warme, & about ỹ South-east Sun, eleuen of vs wēt to our Scute where it then lay, and drew it to the ship, at which time the labour sæmed lighter vnto vs, then it did before whē we toke it in hand, & were forced to leaue it off againe. The reason thereof was the opinion, that we had that the snow as then lay harder vpon the groūd and so was become stronger, and it may be that our courages were better, to sæ that the time gaue vs open water, and that our hope was that we should get from thence, and so three of our men stayd by the Scute to build her to our mindes, and for that it was a herring Scute, which are made narrow behind, therefore they salued it of behinde, and made it abroad stearne, and better to broke the seas: they built it also somewhat higher, and drest it vp as well they could, they rest of our men were busy in the house to make all other things ready for our voiage, and that day drew two sleads with victuals, and other goods vnto the ship, that lay about halfe way betwæne the house and the open water, that after they might haue so much ỹ shorter way, to carry the goods vnto ỹ water side, when we should goe away: at which time al the labour and paines that we toke seemed light and easie vnto vs, because of the hope that we had to get out of that wild desart, irkesome fearefull, and cold country.

The 5. of June it was foule weather, with great store of haile and snow, the wind West, which made an open water, but as then we could doe nothing without the house, but within we made all things ready, as sailes, oares, masses, spрit, rother, sword, and all other necessarie things.

The

The 6. of June, in the morning it was faire weather, the wind north-east, then we went with our Carpenters to the ship, to build vp our Scute, and carried two sleades-full of goods into the ship, both victualles and marchandise, with other things, which we ment to take with vs; after that there rose very foule weather in the south-west, with snow, haile, and raine, which we in long time had not had, whereby the Carpenters were forced to leaue their worke, and goe home to the house with vs, where also we could not be drie, because we had taken of the deales, therewith to amend our boate & our Scute, there laie but a saile ouer it, which would not hold out the water, and the way that laie full of snow began to be soft, so that we left of our shoes made of rugge & felt, and put on our leather shoes.

The 7. of June, there blew a great north-east wind, whereby we saw the Ice come driuing in againe, but the Sunne being south-east it was faire weather againe, and then the Carpenters went to the Scute againe to make an end of their worke, and we packed the marchants goods that we ment to take with vs, and made defences for our selues of the said packes to saue vs from the Sea in the open Scute.

The 8. of June, it was faire weather, and we drew the wares to the ship, which we had packed and made ready, and the Carpenters made ready the Scute, so that the same euening it was almost done, the same day all our men went to draw our boate to the ship, and made ropes to draw withall, such as we vse to draw with in Scutes, which we cast ouer our shoulders, and held fast with all our hands, and so drew both with our hands and our shoulders, which gaue vs more force, and specially the desire and great pleasure we toke to worke at that time, made vs stronger, so that we did more then, then at other times we should haue done, for that good will on the one side, and hope on the other side, encreased our strenght.

The 9. of June, it was faire weather, with variable windes, then we washt our shirts, and all our linnen, against we should be ready to saile away, and the Carpenters were still busie to make an end of the boate and the Scute.

The 10. of June, we caried foure sleades of goods into the ship, the wind then being variable, and at euening it was northerly,

and we were busie in the house to make all things ready, the wine that was left we put into litle vessels, that so we might deuide it into both our vessels, and that as we were inclosed by the Ice, (which we well knew would happen vnto vs) we might the easelier cast the goods vpon the Ice, both out and into the Scutes, as time and place serued vs.

The 11. of June, it was foule weather, and it blew hard north north-west, so that all that day we could doe nothing, and we were in great feare least the storme would carry the Ice and the ship both away together, (which might well haue come to passe) thē we should haue bēne in greater miserie then euer we were, for that our goods both victualles and others were then all in the ship, but God prouided so well for vs, that it fell not out so vnfortunatly.

The 12. of June, it was indifferent faire weather, then we went with hatchets, halberds, shouels and others instruments, to make the way plaine, where we should draw the Scute and the boate to the water side, along the way that lay full of knobbes and hilles of Ice, where we wrought sore, with our hatchets & other instruments, and while we were in the chiefest of our worke there came a great leane Beare out of the Sea, vpon the Ice towards vs, which we iudged to come out of Tartaria: for we had sēne of them twenty or thirty miles within the sea, & for that we had no muskets, but only one, which our Surgian carried, I ran in great haste towards the ship to fetch one or two, which the Beare perceiuing ran after me, and was very likely to haue ouer taken me, but our company sēing that, left their worke and ran after her, which made the Beare turne towards them and left me, but when she ran towards them, she was shot into the body by the Surgian, and ran away, but because the Ice was so vneuen and hilly she could not go farre, but being by vs ouer taken we killed her out right, and smot her tēth out of her head, while she was yet liuing.

The 13. of June, it was faire weather, then the Maister and the Carpenters went to the ship, & there made the Scute & the boate ready, so that there rested nothing as then, but onely to bring it downe to the water side, the Maister and those that were with him, sēing that it was open water, and a good West wind, came

backe

backe to the house againe, and there he spake vnto William Barents (that had bin long sicke) and shewed him, that he thought it good, (seeing it was a fit time) to goe from thence, and so willed the company to driue the boate and the Scute downe to the water side, and in the name of God to begin our voiage, to saile from Noua Zembla, then William Barents wrote a letter, which he put into a Muskets charge, and hanged it vp in the chimney, shewing how he came out of Holland, to saile to the kingdome of China, and what had happened vnto vs, being there on land, with all our crosses, that if any man chanced to come thither, they might know what had happened vnto vs, and how we had bin forced in our extremity to make that house, & had dwelt 10 mounthes therein, and for that we were to put to sea in two small opē boates, & to vndertake a dangerous, & aduenterous voiage in hand, the maister wrote two letters, which most of vs subscribed vnto, signifiing, how we had stayed there vpon the land in great trouble & miserie, in hope that our ship would be freed from the Ice, and that we should saile away with it againe, and how it fell out to the contrary, and that the ship lay fast in the Ice, so that in the end the time passing away, and our victuals beginning to faile vs, we were forced for the sauing of our owne liues, to leaue the ship, and to saile away in our open boates, and so to commit our selues into the hands of God. Which done he put into each of our Scutes a letter, ỹ if we chanced to loose one another, or ỹ by stormes or any other misaduenture we hapened to be cast away, that then by the scute that escaped, men might know, how we left each other, and so hauing finished all things as we determined, we drew the boate to the water side, and left a man in it, and went and fetcht the Scute, and after that eleuen sleads with goods, as victuals, and some wine that yet remained, and the Marchants goods, which we preserued as wel as we could, viz. 6. packs with fine wollen cloth, a chest with linnen, two packets wt Veluet, two smal chests with mony, two drie fats with the mens clothes, and other things, 2 barrels of bread, a barrell of chese, a fletch of Bacon, two runlets of oyle, 6. small runlets of wine, two runlets of vineger, with other packs belonging to ỹ sailers, so that when they lay altogether vpon a heape, a man would haue iudged that they would not haue gone into the Scutes, which being all put into them, we went to the house, and first drew William Barents vpon a slead, to the place where our

Scutes lay, & after that we fetcht Claes Adrianson, both of them hauing bin long sicke, & so we entred into the Scutes, and deuided our selues, into each of them alike, and put into either of them a sicke man, then the Maister caused both the Scutes to ly close one by the other, and there we subcribed to the letters which he had written, the coppie whereof hereafter ensueth, and so committing our selues to the willand merice of God, with a West North-west wind & an endifferent open water, we set saile and put to sea.

The coppie of their letter.

Hauing till this day stayd for the time and opportunity, in hope to get our ship loose, and now are cleane out of hope thereof, for that it lyeth fast shut vp and inclosed in the Ice, and in the last of March, and the first of Aprill, the Ice did so mightily gather together in great hils, that we could not deuise how to get our Scute and boate into the water, or where to find a conuenient place for it, and for that it seemed almost impossible to get the ship out of the Ice, therefore I and *William Barents* our pilot, and other the officers, & company of Sailors thereunto belonging, cõsidering with our selues which would be the best course for vs, to saue our owne liues, and some wares belonging to the Marchants, we could find no better meanes, thẽ to mend our boate and Scute, and to prouide our selues as well as we could of all things necessarie, that being ready, we might not loose or ouerslip any fit time and opportunity, that God should send vs, for that it stood vs vpon to take the fittest time, otherwise we should surely haue perished with hunger and cold, which as yet is to be feared will goe hard inough with vs, for that there are three or foure of vs that are not able to stirre to doe any thinge, and the best and strongest of vs are so weake, with the great cold and diseases that we haue so long time endured, that we haue but halfe a mans strength, and it is to be feared, that it will rather be worse then better, in regrad of the long voiage that we haue in hand, and our bread, wil not last vs longer then to the end of the Mounth of August, and it may easily fal out, that the voiage being contrary and crosse vnto vs, that before that time we shall not be able to get to any land, where we may procure any victuals or other prouisions for our selues as we haue hitherto done our best, therefore we thougth it our best course not to stay any longer here, for

that

hy nature we are bound to seeke our owne good and securites, and so we determined hereupon, and haue vnder written this present letter with our owne hands, vpon the first of Iune 1597. and while vpon the same day we were ready and had a West wind and an indifferent open sea, we did in Gods name prepare our selues, and entred into our voiage, the ship lying as fast as euer it did inclosed in the Ice, notwithstanding that while we were making ready to be gon, we had great wind out of the West, North, and North-west, & yet find no alteration, nor bettering in the weather, & therefore in the last extremity, we left it. vpon the 13 of Iune.

Iacob hemskerke, Peter Peterson vos, Mr. Hans vos, Laurence Willinsõ, Pete Cr orneliſon, Iohn Remærson, William Barẽts, Gerrat de Veer, Leonard Hendrickson, Iacob Ionson Scheadam, Iacob Ionsõ Sterrenburg.

The 14. of June in the morning, the Sunne easterly, we put of from the land of Noua Zembla, and the fast Ice thereunto adioyning, with our boate and our Scute, hauing a West wind, and sailed east-north-east, all that day to the Ilands point, which was fiue miles, but our first beginning was not very good, for we entered fast into the Ice againe, which there laie very hard and fast, which put vs into no smal feare and trouble, and being there, foure of vs wẽt on land, to know the scituation thereof, and there we toke many birds which we kild with stones vpon the cliftes.

The 15. of June, the Ice began to goe away, then we put to saile againe with a south wind, and past along by the head point, and the flushingers point, streaching most north-east, and after that North, to the point of desire, which is about 13. miles, and there we laie till the 16. of June.

The 16. of June, we set saile againe, and got to the Island of Orange, with a South wind, which is 8. miles distant from the point of desire, there we went one land with two small barrels, & a kettle, to melt snow, & to put ỹ water into ỹ barrels, as also to seeke for birds & egges to make meate for our sicke men, and being there, we made fire with such wood as wée found there, and melted the snowe, but found no birds, but thrée of our men went ouer the Ice to the other Island, and got thrée birds, and as we came backe againe, our Master (which was one of the thrée) fell into

the

the Ice, where he was in great danger of his life, for in that place there ran a great streame, but by Gods helpe he got out againe and came to vs, and there dryed himselfe by the fire that we had made, at which fire we dreſt the birds, and carried them to the Scute, to our ſicke men, and filled our two runlets with water that held about eight gallons a peece, which done, we put to the ſea againe, with a South-east wind, and drowſie miſeling weather, whereby we were al dankiſh & wet, for we had no ſhelter in our opē Scutes, and ſailed West, and West and by South, to the Ice point, and being there, both our Scutes lying hard by each other, the maiſter called to William Barents, to know how he did, and William Barents made anſweare and ſaid, Well God be thanked, and I hope before we get to Warehouſe, to be able to goe, then he ſpake to me and ſaid, Gerrit are we about the Ice point? if we be then I pray you lift me vp, for I muſt veiw it once againe, at which time we had ſailed from the Iſland of Orange to the Ice point, about fiue miles, and then the wind was Weſterly, and we made our Scuts faſt to a great peece of Ice, and there eate ſomewhat, but the weather was ſtill fouler and fouler, ſo that we were once againe incloſed with Ice, and forced to ſtay there.

The 17. of June in the morning, when we had broken our faſtes, the Ice came ſo faſt vpon vs, that it made our haires ſtare vpright vpon our heades, it was ſo fearefull to behold, by which meanes we could not make faſt our Scutes, ſo that we thought verily, that it was a foreſhewing of our laſt end, for we drave away ſo hard with the Ice, and were ſo ſore preſt betweēn a flake of Ice, that we thought verily the Scutes would burſt in a hundreth peeces, which made vs loke pittifully one vpon the other, for no counſell nor aduiſe was to be found, but euery minute of an houre, we ſaw death before our eies, at laſt being in this diſcomfort, & extreēme neceſſity, ỹ maſter ſaid if we could take hold with a rope vpon the faſt Ice, we might therewith, drawe ỹ Scute vp, and ſo get it out of the great drift of Ice, but as this counſell was good, yet it was ſo full of daunger that it was the hazard of his life that ſhould take vpon him to doe it, & without doing it, was it moſt certaine, ỹ it would coſt vs all our liues: this counſell as I ſaid was good, but no man (like to the tale of ỹ miſe) durſt hang the bell about ỹ cats necke, fearing to be drowned, yet

neceſ-

necessity required to haue it done, and the most danger made vs chuse the least, so that being in that perplexity, I being the lightest of all our company, toke on me to fasten a rope vpon the fast Ice, and so crèeping from one pèece of driuing Ice to another, by Gods help got to the fast Ice, where I made a rope fast to a high howell, and they that were in the Scute, drew it thereby vnto the said fast Ice, and then one man alone could drawe more then all of them could haue done before, and when we had gotten thither, in all haste we toke our sicke men out and layd them vpon the Ice, laying clothes and other things vnder them, and then toke all our goods out of the Scutes, and so drew them vpon the Ice, whereby for that time we were deliuered from that great danger, making account that we had escaped out of deaths clawes, as it was most true.

The 18. of June, we repaired and amended our Scutes againe, being much bruised and crushed with the racking of the Ice, and were forced to driue all the nailes fast againe, and to pèece many things about them, God sending vs wood, wherewith we moult our pitch, and did all other things that belonged thereunto, that done, some of vs went vpon the land, to sèeke for egges, which the sicke men longed for, but we could finde none, but we found foure birds, not without great danger of our liues, betwèene the Ice and the firme land, wherein we often fell, and were in no small danger.

The 19. of June, it was indifferent weather, the wind north-west, and west south-west, but we were still shut vp in the Ice, and saw no opening, which made vs thinke that there would be our last aboade, and that we should neuer get from thence, but on the other side we comforted our selues againe, that sèeing God had helped vs often times vnexpectedly, in many perils, and that his arme, as yet was not shortened, but that he could helpe vp, at his good will and pleasure, it made vs somewhat comfortable, and caused vs to speake cheerfully one vnto the other.

The 20. of June, it was indifferent weather, the wind West, and when the Sunne was south-east, Claes Adrianson, began to be extreme sicke, whereby we perceiued that he would not liue long, and the Boateson came into our Scute, and told vs in what case he was, and that he could not long continue aliue,

whereupon

Whereupon William Barents spake & said, I thinke I shal not liue long after him, tyet we did not iudge William Barēts to be so sicke, for we sat talking one with the other, and spake of many things, and William Barents read in my Card, which I had made touching our voiage, at last he laid away the Card, and spake vnto me saying Gerrit giue me some drinke, & he had no sooner drunke, but he was taken with so sodain a qualme, that he turned his eies in his head, and died presently, and we had no time to call the maister, out of the Scute, to speake vnto him, and so he died before Claes Adrianson: the death of William Barents put vs in no small discomfort, as being the chiefe guide, and onely Pilot on whom we reposed our selues, next vnder God, but we could not striue against God, and therefore we must of force be content.

The 21. of June, the Ice began to drive away againe, and God made vs some opening with a south-south-west wind, and when the Sunne was north-west, the wind began to blow south-east, with a good gale, and we began to make preparation, to goe from thence.

The 22. of June, in the morning, it blew a good gale out of the south east, and then the Sea was reasonable open, but we were forced to draw our Scutes ouer the Ice, to get vnto it, which was great paine and labour vnto vs; for first we were forced to draw our Scutes ouer a pece of Ice, of 50. paces long, and there put them into the water, and then againe to draw them vp vpon other Ice, and after drew them at the least 100. paces more ouer the Ice, before we could bring them to a good place, where we might easily get out, and being gotten vnto the open water, we committed our selues to God, and set saile, the Sunne being about east-north-east, with an indifferent gale of wind, out of the south, and south-south-east, and sailed west, and west and by south, till the Sunne was south, and then we were round about enclosed with Ice againe, and could not get out, but were forced to lie still, but not long after, the Ice opened againe, like to a fluce, and we past through it and set saile againe, and so sailed along by the land, but were presently enclosed with Ice, but being in hope of opening againe, meane time we eate somewhat, for the Ice went not away as it did before: after that we vsed all the meanes we could to breake it, but all in vaine,

and

and yet a good while after, the Ice opened againe, and we got out, and sailed along by the land, west and by south, with a south wind.

The 23. of June, we sailed still forward west and by south, till the Sunne was south-east, and got to the Trust point, which is distant from the Ice point 25. miles, and then could goe no further, because the Ice laie so hard, and so close together, and yet it was faire weather: the same day we toke the higth of the Sunne with the Astrolabium, and also with our Astronomicall ring, and found his higth to be 37. degrées, and his declination 23. degrées, and 30. minutes, which taken from the higth aforesaid, there rested 13. degrées and 30. minutes, which subtracted out of 90. degrées, the higth of the Pole was 76. degrées and 30. minutes, and it was faire Sunne-shine weather, and yet it was not so strong as to melt the snow, that we might haue water to drinke, so that we set all our tin platers and other things ful of snow to melt, and so molt it, and put snow in our mouthes, to melt it downe into our throates, but all was not enough, so that we were compelled to endure great thirst.

The stretching of the land from the house where we wintered, along by the north side of *Noua Zembla*, to the straights of *Vvei-gats*, where we past ouer to the coast of *Russia*, and ouer the entrie of the white Sea to *Cola*, according to the Card here ensueing.

From the low land, to the Streame Baie, the course east and west: 4. miles.

From the Streame Baie, to the Ice hauen point, the course east and by north 3. miles.

From the Ice hauen point, to the Ilands point, the course east north-east 5. miles.

From the Ilands point, to the Flushingers point, the course north-east and by east 3. miles.

From the Flushingers point, to ỹ head point, the course north-east 4. miles.

From the head point, to the point of desire, the course south, and north 6. miles.

From the point of Desire, to the Iland of Dzange, north-west 8. miles.

From the Islands of Orange, to the Ice point, the course west, and west and by south 5. miles.

From the Ice point, to the point of Thrust, the course west, and by south 25. miles.

From the point of Trust, to Nassawes point, the course west, and west and by north 10. miles.

From the Nassawe point, to the east end of the crosse Island, the course west and by north 8. miles.

From the east end of the crosse Island, to Williams Island, the course west and by south 3. miles.

From Williams Island, to the black point, the course West South-west, 6. miles.

From the black point, to the east end of the admirable Island, the course West South-west 7. miles.

From the east to the west point of the admirable Island, the course west southwest 5 miles.

From the West point of the admirable Island, to Cape Planto, the course South-west and by west, 10 miles.

From Cape de Planto, to Lombs-bay, the course west South-west, 8. miles.

From Lombsbay to the staues point, the course west South-west 10. miles.

From the staues point to Langenelle, the course South-west & by South, 14. miles.

From Langenes to Cape de Cant, the course South-west and by South 6. miles.

From Cape de Cant, to the point with the black clifts, the course South and by west, 4. miles.

From the point with the black cliftes, to the black Island, the course South south east 3. miles.

From the black Island, to Constint-sarke, the course east and west 2 miles.

From constint sarke, to the Crosse point, the course South south east 5 miles.

From crosse point, to S. Laurence bay, the course South south east 6 miles.

From S. Laurence bay, to Hel-hauen, the course South east 6. miles.

From

From Mel-hauen to the two Islands; the course South South-east 16. miles.

From the 2. Islands, where we crost ouer to the Russia coast, to the Islands of Matlow and Oelgoye, the course South-west 30. myles.

From Matlow & Oelgoye, to the créke where we sailed the compasse round about, and came to the same place againe. 22 miles.

From that créke to Colgoy, the course West North-west, 18. miles.

From Colgoy to the east point of Camdenas, the course West North-west, 20. miles.

From the East point of Camdenas, to the West side of the White sea, the course West North-west, 40 miles.

From the West point of the White sea, to the 7. Islands, the course North-west, 14. miles.

From the 7. Islands, to the West end of Kilduin, the course North-west, 20. miles.

From the west end of Kelduin, to the place where Iohn Cornelis came vnto vs, the course North-west and by West, 7. miles.

From thence to Cola, the course West Southerly 18. miles.

So that we sailed in the two open Scutes, some times in the Ice, then ouer the Ice, and through the sea, 381 miles flemish, which is 1143 miles English.

The 24. of June the Sunne being Easterly, we rowed here and there in the Ice, to se where we might best goe out, but we saw no opening, but when the Sunne was South, we got into the sea, for the which we thanked God most heartilie, that he had sent vs an vnexpected opening, and then we sailed with an East wind, and went lustily forward, so that we made our account to get aboue the point of Nassawes close by the land, & we could easily sée the point of Nassawes, and made our account to be about 3 miles from it, the wind being South and South South-west, then fiue of our men went on land, and there found some wood, whereof they brought as much as they could into the Scutes, but found neither birds nor egges, with the which wood they sod a pot of water pap. (which we called Matsammore) that we might eate some warme thing the wind blowing still Southerly.

The 25. of June, it blew a great South-wind, and the Ice

whereunto we made our selues fast, was not very strong, whereby we were in great feare, that we should breake off from it, and driue into the sea, for when the Sun was in the West, a péece of that Ice brake of, whereby we were forced to dislodge, and make our selues fast to another péece of Ice.

The 26. of June, it still blew hard out of the South, and broke the Ice whereunto we were fast, in péeces, and we thereby draue into the sea, and could get no more to the fast Ice, whereby we were in a thousand dangers to be all cast away, and driuing in ẏ sort in the sea, we rowed as much as we could, but we could not get néere vnto the land, therefore we hoysed vp our fock, and so made vp with our saile, but our fock-mast brake, twice in péeces, and then it was worse for vs then before, and notwithstanding that there blew a great gale of wind, yet we were forced to hoyse vp our great saile, but the wind blew so hard into it, that if we had not presently taken it in againe, we had sunke in the sea, or else our boate would haue bin filled with water, for the water began, to leap ouer borde, and we were a good way in the sea, at which time the waues went so hollow, that it was most fearful, and we therby saw nothing, but death before our eyes, and euery twinckling of an eye lookt when we should sincke. But God that had deliuered vs out of so many dangers of death, holpe vs once againe, & contrary to our expectations sent vs a North-west wind, and so with great danger we got to ẏ fast Ice againe, when we were deliuered out of that danger, and knew not where our other Scute was, we sailed one mile along by the fast Ice, but found it not, whereby we were wholy out of heart, & in great feare ẏ they were drowned, at which time it was mistie weather, and so sailing along, & hearing no newes of our other scute, we shot of a Musket, wͤ they hearing shot of another but yet we could not sée each other, meane time approching néerer to each other, & the weather waxing somwhat cléerer, as we & they shot once againe, we saw the smoake of their péece, & at last we met together againe, & saw thē ly fast betwéen driuing & fast Ice, & when we got néere vnto thē, we went ouer the Ice, & holp them to vnlade the goods out of their Scute, and drew it ouer the Ice, and with much paine and trouble brought it into the open water againe, and while they were fast in the Ice, we found some wood vpon the land, by the sea side, and when we lay by each other we sod some bread and water together, and eate it vp warme,

which

which did vs much good.

The 17. of June, we set saile with an indifferent gale out of the east, & got a mile aboue the Cape de-Nassaw, one the west side thereof, and then we had the wind against vs, and we were forced to take in our sailes, and began to rowe and as we went along close by the land, we saw so many Sea-horses lying vpon the Ice, that it was admirable, and a great number of birds, at the which we discharged 2. muskets and killed twelue of the, which we fetcht into our Scutes, and rowing in that sort, we had a great mist, and then we entred into driuing Ice, so that we were compelled to make our Scutes fast vnto the fast Ice, and to stay there till the weather brake vp, the wind being west north-west, and right against vs.

The 28. of June, when the Sunne was in the east, we laid all our goods vpon the Ice, and then drew the Scutes vpon the Ice also, because we were so hardly prest on all sides, with the Ice, and the wind came out of the Sea vpon the land, and therefore we were in feare to be wholely inclosed with the Ice, and should not be able to get out thereof againe, and being vpon the Ice, we laid sailes ouer our Scutes, and laid downe to rest, appointing one of our men to keepe watch, and when the Sunne was north there came three Beares towards our Scutes, wherewith he that kept the watch cried, three Beares three Beares, at which noise we leapt out of our boates, with our muskets, that were laden with haile-shot, to shoote at birds, and had no time to discharge them, and therefore shot at them therewith, and although that kinde of shot could not hurt them much, yet they ranne away, and in the meane time they gaue vs leisure to lade our muskets with bullets, and by that meanes we shot one of the three, dead, which the other two perceauing ranne away, but within two houres after they came againe, but when they were almost at vs, and heard vs make a noise, they ranne away, at which time the wind was west and west and by north, which made the Ice driue with great force into the east.

The 29. of June, the Sunne being south-south-west, the two Beares came againe to the place where the dead Beare laie, where one of them toke the dead Beare in his mouth, and went a great way with it ouer the rugged Ice, & then began to eate it,

which we perceauing shot a musket at her, but she hearing the noise thereof, ran away, and let the dead Beare lie, then foure of vs went thither, and saw that in so short a time she had eaten almost the halfe of her, we toke the dead Beare and laid it vpon a high heape of Ice, that we might sée it out of our Scute, that if the Beare came againe we might shot at her, at which time we tried the great strenght of the Beare, that carried the dead Beare as lightely in her mouth, as if it had bœne nothing, where as we foure had enough to doe to cary away the halfe dead Beare betwéene vs; then the wind still held west, which draue the Ice into the east.

The 30. of June, in the morning, when the Sunne was east and by north, the Ice draue hard east-ward, by meanes of the west wind, and then there came two Beares vpon a pœce of Ice that draue in the Sea, and thought to set vpon vs, and made show as if they would leape into the water, and come to vs, but did nothing, whereby we were of opinion, that they were the same Beares, that had bœne there before, and about the south-south-east Sunne, there came an other Beare vpon the fast Ice, and made towards vs, but being neare vs, and hearing vs make a noise, she went away againe, then the wind was west-south-west, and the Ice began somewhat to falle from the land, but because it was mistie weather, and a hard wind, we durst not put to Sea, but staied for a better opportunitie.

The 1. of Julie, it was indifferent faire weather, with a west-north-west wind, and in the morning the sunne bœing east, there came a beare from the driuing yce towards vs, and swam ouer the water to the fast yce whereon we lay, but when she heard vs, she came no nearer, but ran away, and when the sunne was south-east, the Ice came so fast in towards vs, that all the Ice whereon we lay with our Scutes and our goods, brake and ran one pœce vpon another, whereby we were in no small feare, for at that time most of our goods fell into the water, but we with great diligence drew our Scutes further vpon the Ice towards the land, where we thought to be better defended from the driuing of the Ice, and as we went to fetch our goods, we fell into the greatest trouble that euer we had before, for ý we endured so great danger in the sauing thereof, that as we laid hold vpon on pœce thereof, the rest sunke

doune with the Ice, and many times the Ice brake vnder our owne fæt, whereby we were wholy diſcomforted, and in a maner cleane out of all hope, expecting no iſſue thereof, in ſuch ſort that our trouble at that time ſurmounted all our former cares and impeachments, and when we thought to draw vp our boates vpon the Ice, the Ice brake vnder vs, and we were caried away with the Scute, and al by the driuing Ice, and when we thought to ſaue the goods, the Ice brake vnder our fæt, and with that the Scute brak in many places, eſpecially ẏ which we had mẽded, as ẏ maſt, ẏ maſt planke, and almoſt al the Scute, wherein one of our men that was ſicke, and a cheſt of mony lay, which we with great danger of our liues got out from it, for as we were doing it, the Ice that was vnder our fæt draue from vs, and ſlid vpon other Ice, whereby we were in danger to burſt both our armes & our legs, at which time thinking, ẏ we had bin cleane quit of our Scute, we beheld each other in pittiful maner, knowing not what we ſhould doe, our liues depending thereon, but God made ſo good prouiſion for vs, ẏ ẏ pæces of Ice draue from each other, wherewith we ran in great haſte vnto the Scute, and drew it to vs again in ſuch caſe as it was, and layd it vpon the faſt Ice by the boate, where it was in more ſecurity, which put vs vnto an exceeding and great and dangerous labor, from the time that the Sunne was ſouth eaſt, vntill it was Weſt South weſt, and in al that time we reſted not, which made vs extreame weary, and wholy out of comfort, for that it troubled vs ſore, and it was much more fearfull vnto vs, then at that time when William Barents dyed, for there we were almoſt drowned, & that day we loſt (which was ſounke in the ſea) two barrels of bread, a cheſt wᵗ linnẽ cloth, a driefat with the Sailors clothes, our Aſtronicale ring, a pack of Scarlet-cloth, a runlet of oyle, & ſome chæſes and a runlet of wine, which bongd with the Ice, ſo that there was not any thing thereof ſaued.

The 2. of Julie, the ſunne Eaſt, there came another beare vnto vs, but we making a noyſe ſhe ran away, and when the Sun was Weſt South-weſt, it began to be faire weather, then we began to mend our Scute, with the planks wherewith we had made the buyckmith, and while 6. of vs were buſied about mending of our Scute the other fiue went further into the land, to ſæke for ſome wood, and to fetch ſome ſtones, to lay vpon the Ice, that we might

make

make a fire thereon, therewith to melt our pitch, which we should nead about the Scute, as also to see if they could fetch any wood for a mast, which they found with certaine staues, and brought them where the Scutes lay, and when they came to vs againe, they shewed vs that they had found certaine wood that had bin clouen, & brought some wedges with them, wherwith the said wood had bin cloué, whereby it appeared that men had bin there, then we made al the haste we could to make a fire and to melt our pitch, and to do al other things that were necessary to be done for the repairing of our Scute. so that we got it ready againe, by that the Sunne was North-east, at which time also we roasted our birds, & made a good meale with them.

The 3. of July, in the morning the Sunne being East, two of our men went to the water, and there they found two of our oares our helme sticke, the pack of Scarlet cloth, the chest with linnen cloth, and a hat that fell out of the driefat, whereby we gest, that it was broken in peeces, which they perceiuing, toke as much with them as they could carry, and came vnto vs, shewing vs that they had left more goods behind them, whereupon the Maister with 5. more of vs went thither, & drew al the goods vpon the firme Ice, y when we went away, we might take it with vs, but they could not carry the chest nor the pack of cloth (that were ful of water) because of their waight, but were forced to let them stand, till we went away, that the water might drop out of them, and so they did, the Sunne being South west: there came another great beare vnto vs, which the man that kept watch saw not, and had béene deuoured by her, if one of our other men that lay downe in the ship, had not espied her, and called to him that kept watch, to loke to himselfe, who therewith ran away, meane time the beare was shot into the body, but she escaped, and that time the wind was east, north-east.

The 4. of July it was so faire cleare weather, that from the time we were first in Noua Zembla, we had not the like, then we wa*t the veluets that had béene wet with the salt water, in fresh water, drawne out of snow, and then dryed them, and packt them vp'againe, at which time the wind was west, & west southwest.

The 5. of July it was faire weather, the wind west, southwest,

the

the same day dyed Iohn Franson of Harlem (Claes Adrians nephew, that dyed the same day when William Barents dyed) the Sunne being then about North, north-west, at which time the Ice came mightily driuing in vpon vs, and then sixe of our men went into the land, and there fetcht some fire-wood to dresse our meate.

The 6. of July it was misty weather, but about euening it began to cléere vp, and the wind was south-east, which put vs in some comfort, and yet we lay fast vpon the Ice.

The 7. of July it was faire weather with some raine, the wind west, South-west, and at euening west, and by north, then wée went to the open water, and there killed thirtéene birds, which we toke vppon a péece of driuing Ice, and layd them vpon the fast Ice.

The 8. of July it was close misty weather, then we drest the foules which we had killed, which gaue vs a princely mealetide, in the euening there blew a fresh gale of wind, out of the North east, which put vs in great comfort to get from thence.

The 9. of July in the morning, the Ice began to driue, whereby we got open water on the land side, and then also the fast Ice whereon we lay, began to driue, whereupon the master and ỹ men went to fetch the packe and the chest, that stood vpon the Ice, to put them into the Scute, and then drew the Scutes to the water, at least 340. paces, which was hard for vs to do, in regard that the labour was great, and we very weake, & when the Sun was south south east we set saile, with an east wind, but when the sunne was west, we were forced to make towards the fast Ice againe, because thereabouts it was not yet gon, ỹ wind being south, and came right from the land, whereby we were in good hope that it would driue away, and that we should procéede in our voyage.

The 10. of July, from the time that the sunne was east, north-east, till it was east, we toke great paines & labour to get through the Ice, and at last we got through, and rowed forth, vntill wée happened to fall betwéene two great flakes of Ice, that closed one with the other, so that we could not get through, but were forced to draw the Scutes vpon them, and to vnlade the goods, and then to draw them ouer to the open water on the other side, and then we must go fetch the goods also to the same place, being at

least 110. paces long, which was very hard for vs, but there was no remedy, for it was but a folly for vs to thinke of any wearines, and when we were in the open water againe, we rowed forward as well as we could, but we had not rowed long, before we fell betwæne two great flakes of Ice, that came driuing one against the other, but by Gods help, and our spædy rowing, we got from betwæne them, before they closed vp, and being through we had a hard west wind, right in our teeth, so ý of force we were constrained to make towards the fast Ice that lay by the shore, and at last with much trouble, we got vnto it, and being there, we thought to row along by the fast Ice, vnto an Iland that we saw before vs, but by reason of the hard contrary wind, we could not goe farre, so that we were compelled to draw the Scutes and the goods vpon the Ice, to sée what weather God would send vs, but our courages were coled, to sée our selues so often inclosed in ý Ice being in great feare ý by meanes of the long and continuall paines (which we were forced to take) we should lose all our strength, & by that meanes should not long be able to continue or hold out.

The 11. of July in the morning as we sate fast vpon the Ice, the sunne being North east, there came a great beare out of the water, running towards vs, but we watcht for her with three muskets, and when she came within 30. paces of vs, we shot all the three muskets at her, and killed her outright, so that she stirred not a foote, and we might sée the fat run out at the holes of her skinne, that was shot in with the muskets, swimme vpon the water like oyle, and so driuing dead vpon the water, we went vpon a flake of Ice to her, and putting a rope about her neck, drew her vp vpon the Ice, and smit out her teeth, at which time we measured her body, & found it to be eight foote thick, then we had a west winde with close weather, but when the sunne was South it began to cleere vp, then three of our men went to the Iland that lay before vs, and being there, they saw the Crosse Iland, lying westward from them, and went thither to sée if that sommer there had bæne any Russian there, and went thither vpon the fast Ice, that lay betwæne the two Ilands, and being in the Iland, they could not perceiue that any man had bæne in it since we were there, there they got 70. egges, but when they had them, they knew not wherein to carry them, at last one of them

put

put off his brèches, and tying them fast below, they carried them betwéene two of them, and the third bare the musket: and so came to vs againe, after they had bœne twelue houres out, which put vs no small feare to thinke what was become of them, they told vs that they had many times gone vp to the knées in water, vpon the Ice betwéene both the Ilands: and it was at least 6. miles to and fro, that they had gone, which made vs wonder how they could indure it, séeing we were all so weake. With the egges that they had brought, we were al wel comforted, and fared like Lords, so that we found some reliefe in our great misery, and then we shared our last wine amongst vs, whereof euery one had thrée glasses.

The 12. of July in the morning, when the sunne was East, the wind began to blow east, and east north east, with misty weather, and at euening six of our men went into the land, to séeke certaine stones, and found some, but none of the best sort, and comimng backe againe, either of them brought some wood.

The 13. of July it was a faire day, then seuen of our men went to the firme land, to séeke for more stones, & found some, at which time the wind was South-east.

The 14. of July it was faire weather with a good south wind, and then the Ice began to driue from the land, whereby we were in good hope to haue an open water, but the wind turning westerly againe, it lay still. When the sunne was south-west, thrée of our men went to the next Iland, that lay before vs, and there shot a Beecheynet, which they brought to the Scute, and gaue it amongst vs, for all our goods were common.

The 15. of July, it was misty weather, that morning the wind was south-east, but the sunne being west, it began to raine, and the wind turned west and west south-west.

The 16. of July there came a beare from the firme land, that came very nére vnto vs, by reason that it was as white as snow, whereby at first we could not discerne it to be a beare, because it shewed so like the snow, but by her stirring at last wee perceiued her, and as she came nére vnto vs, we shot at her, and hit her, but she ran away: that morning, the wind was west, and after that againe, east north-east with close weather.

The 17. July, about the south south east sunne, 5. of our men

went againe to the nèreſt Iſland, to ſée if there appeared any open water, for our long ſtaying there was no ſmall griefe vnto vs, perceiuing not how we ſhould get from thence, who being halfe way thither, they found a beare lying behind a pèece of Ice, which the day before had bène ſhot by vs, but ſhe hearing vs went away, but one of our men following her with a boate-hooke, thruſt her into the ſkinne, wherewith the beare roſe vp vpon her hinder fèet, and as the man thruſt at her againe, ſhe ſtroke the Iron of the boat-hooke in pèces, wherewith the man fell downe vpon his buttocks, which our other two men ſèeing, two of them ſhot the beare into the body, and with that ſhe ran away, but the other man went after her with his broken ſtaffe, and ſtroke the beare vpon the backe, wherewith the beare turnd about againſt the man thrée times one after the other, and then the other two came to her, and ſhot her into the body againe, wherewith ſhe ſat downe vpon her buttocks, and could ſcant runne any further, and then they ſhot once againe, wherewith ſhe fell downe, and they ſmot her téeth out of her head: all that day the wind was north-eaſt, & eaſt north-eaſt.

The 18. of July, about the eaſt ſunne, thrée of our men went vp vpon the higheſt part of the land, to ſée if there was any open water in the ſea, at which time they ſaw much open water, but it was ſo farre from the land, that they were almoſt out of comfort, becauſe it lay ſo farre from the land and the faſt Ice, being of opinion that we ſhould not be able to drawe the Scutes and the goods ſo farre thither, becauſe our ſtrengthes ſtil began to decreaſe: and the ſore labour and paine that we were forced to indure more and more, increaſed, and comming to our Scutes, they brought vs that newes, but we being compelled thereunto by neceſſity abandoned all wearines and faint heartednes, & determined with our ſelues to bring the boates and the goods to the water ſide, and to row vnto that Ice, where we muſt paſſe ouer to get to the open water, and when we got to it, we vnladed our ſcutes, and drewe them firſt ouer the Ice to the open water, and after that the goods; it being at the leaſt 1000. paces, which was ſo ſore a labour for vs, that as we were in hand therewith, we were in a manner ready to leaue off in the middle thereof, and feared that wée ſhould not goe through withall, but for that we had gone through ſo many dan-

gers,

gers, we hoped ỹ we should not be saint therin, wishing ỹ it might be ỹ last trouble ỹ we should as then indure, & so w̃ great difficulty got into the open water, about the south-west sunne, then we set saile, till the sunne was west and by south; & presently fell amongst the Ice againe, where we were forced to drawe vp the Scutes againe vpon the Ice, and being vpon it, we could sée the crosse Iland, which we gest to be about a mile from vs, the wind then being east, and east north-east.

The 19. of July lying in that manner vpon the Ice, about the East Sunne, seuen of our men went to the Crosse Iland, and being there they saw great store of opẽ water in ỹ West, where with they much reioyced, and made as great haste as they could to get to the Scutes againe, but before they came away they got a hundred egges, and brought them away with them, and comming to the Scutes, they shewed vs that they had séen, as much open water in the sea, as they could decerne, being in good hope, that that would be the last time that they should draw the Scutes ouer the Ice, and that it should be no more measured by vs, and in that sort put vs in good comfort, whereupon we made spéede to dresse our egges & shared them amongst vs, and presently the Sun being South South-west we fell to worke, to make all things ready, to bring the Scutes to the water, which were to be drawen at least 200. paces ouer the Ice, which we did with a good courage, because we were in good hope that it would be the last time, and getting to the water, we put to sea with Gods helpe, with an East, and East North east wind, & a good gale, so that with the west Sun, we past by the Crosse Iland, which is distant from Cape de Nassawes 10. miles, and presently after that the Ice left vs, & we got clére out of it, yet we saw some in the sea, but it troubled vs not and so we held our course West and by South, with a good gale of wind out of the East, and East North-east, so that we gest that betwéene euery meale-tide we sailed eighténe miles, wherewith we were exceedingly comforted, giuing God thanks, that he had deliuered vs out of so great and many difficulties, (wherein it séemed that we should haue bin ouerwhelmed,) hoping in his mercie, that from thence forth he would ayde vs to bring our voyage to an end.

The 20. of July, hauing still a good gale about the South-east Sunne, we past along by the black point, which is twelue miles

distant from the crosse Iland, and sailed West South west, and about the euening with the West Sunne, we saw the Admirable Iland, and about the North Sun past a long by it, which is distant from the black point eight miles, and passing along by it, we saw about two hundred sea horses, lying vpon a flake of Ice, and we sayled close by them, and draue them from thence, which had almost cost vs deere, for they being mighty strong fishes, and of great force, swam towards vs, (as if they would be reuenged on vs for the dispight that we had don them (round about our Scuts with a great noyse, as if they would haue deuoured vs, but we escaped from them by reason, that we had a good gale of wind, yet it was not wisely done of vs, to wake sleeping wolues.

The 21. of July, we past by Cape Pluncio, about the East North-east Sune, vñ lyeth West South-west ight miles from ẏ Admirable Iland, & vñ the good galey we had about ẏ South-west Sun, we sailed by Langenes, 9 miles frõ Cape Pluncio, there ẏ lãd reacheth most South-west and we had a good North-east winde.

The 22. of July, we hauing so good a gale of wind, when we came to Cape de Cant, there we went on land to seeke for some birds & egs, but we found none, so we sayled forwards, but after ẏ about ẏ South Sun we saw a clift, ẏ was ful of birds, thither we sailed & casting stones at them, we killed 22. birds, and got fifténe egges, which one of our men fetcht from the clift, and if we would haue stayed there any longer, we might haue taken a hundred or two hundred birds at least, but because the maister was somewhat further into sea-ward then we, and stayed for vs, and for that we would not lose that faire fore-wind, we sailed forwards a long by the land, and about the South-west Sunne, we came to another point, where we got a hundred twenty fiue birds, which we toke with our hands out of their nests, and some we killed with stones and made them fal downe into the water, for it is a thing certaine ẏ those birds neuer vsed to see men, & that noman had euer sought or vsed to take them, for else they would haue flowne away, and that they feared no body, but the Fores and other wilde beastes, that could not clime vp the high clifts, and that therefore they had made their nests thereon, where they were out of feare of any beastes comming vnto them, for we were in no small daunger of breaking of our legges and armes, especially as we came downe

againe

againe, because the clift was so high and so steepe, those birds had euery one but one egge in their neasts, and that lay vpon the bare clift without any straw or other thing vnder them, which is to be wondred at, to thinke how they could breed thir young ones in so great cold, but it is to be thought and beléeued, that they therfore sit but vpon on egge, that so the heat which they giue in bréeding so many, may be wholy giuen vnto one egge, and by that meanes it hath all the heat of the birde vnto it selfe, and there also we found many egges, but most of them were foule and bad, and when we left them, the wind fell flat against vs, and blew North-west, and there also we had much Ice, and we toke great paines to get from the Ice, but we could not get aboue it, and at last by lauering we fell into the Ice, and being there we saw much open water towards the land, whereunto we made as well as we could, but our Maister (that was more to sea ward) perceiuing vs to be in the Ice thought we had gotten some hurt, and lauered to and againe along by the Ice, but at last séeing that we sailed therein, he was of opinion that we saw some open water, and that we made towards it (as it was true) and therefore he wound also towards vs, and came to land by vs where we found a good hauen, and lay safe almost from all winds, and he came thither about two houres after vs, there we went on land, and got some eggs and some wood to make a fire, wherewith we made ready the birds that we had taken, at which time we had a North west wind with close weather.

The 23. of July, it was darke and mistie weather, with a North wind, whereby we were forced to lye still in that créeke or hauen: meane time some of our men went on land, to séeke for some egges and stones, but found not many, but a reasonable number of good stones.

The 24. of July, it was faire weather, but the wind still Northerly, whereby we were forced to lye still, and about none we toke the higth of ỳ Sun, with our astrolabium, and found it to be eluated aboue the Horizon 37. degrées & 20. min. his declination 20. degrées & 10. min. which subtracted frõ ỳ higth aforesaid rested 17. degrées & 10 minutes, which taken from 90 degrées, the higth of the Pole was 73. degrées and 10. minutes, and for ỳ we lay stil there, some of our men went often times on land, to séeke stones, and found some that were as good as euer any that we found.

The

The 25. of July it was darke misty weather, the wind north, but we were forced to ly still, because it blew so hard.

The 26. of July it began to be faire weather, which we had not had for certaine daies together, the wind still north; and about the south sunne, we put to sea, but it was so great a creeke that we were forced to put foure miles into the sea, before wee could get about the peint thereof: and it was most in the wind, so that it was midnight before wee got aboue it, sometimes sayling, and sometimes rowing: and hauing past it, we stroke our sailes, and rowed along by the land.

The 27. of July it was faire calme weather, so that we rowed all that day, through the broken Ice, along by the land, the wind being northwest, and at euening about the west sunne, we came to a place where there ran a great streame, whereby we thought that we were about Constinsarke, for we saw a great creeke, and we weree of opinion ỹ it went through to the Tartarian sea, our course was most south-west: about the north sunne we past along by the crosse point, and sailed betwéen the firme land and an Island, & then went South south-east, with a Northwest wind and made good spéed, the maister with ỹ Scute being a good way before vs, but whē he had gotten about ỹ point of the Island, he staied for vs, & there we lay by ỹ clifts, hoping to take some birds, but got none, at which time we had sailed from Cape de Cant along by Constinsarke, to the crosse point 20. miles, our course South south-east, the wind North-west.

The 28. of July it was faire weather, with a North-east wind, then we sailed along by the land, and with the South-west sunne, got before S. Laurence Bay, or Sconce point, and sayled South south-east, 6. miles, and being there, we found two Russians Lodgies, or ships, beyond the point, wherewith we were not a little comforted, to thinke that we were come to the place where we found men, but were in some doubt of them, because they were so many, for at that time, wee sawe at least 30. men, and knew not what they were, there with much paine and labour, we got to the land, which they perceiuing, left off their worke, and came towards vs, but without any armes, and wée also went on shore, as many as were well, for diuers of vs were very ill at ease, and weake by reason of a great scouring in their bodyes,

bodies, and when wee met together, wée saluted each other in friendly wise, they after theirs, and we after our manner, and when we were met, both they and we lokt each other stedfastly in the face, for that some of them knew vs, and we them, to bée the same men which the yeare before, when we past through the Weigats, had béen in our ship: at which time we perceined ẏ they were abasht, and wondred at vs, to remember that at that time we were so well furnished with a great ship, that was exceedingly prouided of all things necessary, and then to sée vs so leane & bare, & with so small Scutes into that country: & amongst them there were two, that in friendly manner clapt ẏ master & me vpon the shoulder, as knowing vs since ẏ voyage: for there was none of all our men that was as then in that voiage, but we two onley, and asked vs for our Crable, meaning our ship, and we shewed them by signes as well as we could (for we had no interpreter) that we had lost our ship in the Ice, wherewith they sayd, Crable pro pal, (which we vnderstood to be, haue you lost your ship) and we made answere, Crable pro pal, which was as much as to say, that we had lost our ship, and many more words we could not vse, because we vnderstood not each other, then they made shew to be sorry for our losse, and to be grieued that we the yeare before had béene there with so many ships, and then to sée vs in so simple mãner, & made vs signes that then they had drunke wine in our ship, and asked vs what drinke we had now, wherewith one of our men went into the scute and drew some water, and let them taste thereof, but they shakt their heads, and said No dobbre (that is, it is not good) then our master went néere vnto them, and shewed them his mouth, to giue them to vnderstand that we were troubled with a lothnesse in our bellies, and to know if they could giue vs any councel to help it, but they thought we made shew that we had great hunger, wherewith one of them went vnto their lodging, and fetcht a round Rie loafe, weighing about 8. pounds, with some smoked soules, which we accepted thankfully, and gaue them in exchange halfe a dozen of Muschuyt, then our master led two of the chiefe of them, with him into his Scute, & gaue them some of the wine that we had, being almost a gallon, for it was so neere out: and while we staied there, we were very familiar with them, and went to the place where they lay, & sod some of our mischuyt

with water by their fire, that we might eate some warme thing downe into our bodies, and we were much comforted to see the Russians for that in thirteene moneths time, that wee departed from Iohn Cornelison, we had not seene any man, but onely monsterous and cruell wild beares: for that as then we were in some comfort, to see that we had liued so long, to come in company of men againe, and therewith we said vnto eath other, now we hope it will fall out better with vs, seeing we haue found men againe, thanking God with all our hearts, that he had beene so gracious and mercifull vnto vs, to giue vs life vntill that time.

The 29. of July it was reasonable faire weather, & that morning the Russians began to make preparatiõ to be gone, & to set saile: at which time they digd certains barrels with traine oile out of the sieges, which they had buried there, and put it into their ships, and we not knowing whither they would go, saw them saile towards ỹ VVeigats: at which time also we set saile, & followed after them, but they sayling before vs, and we following them, along by the land, the weather being close and misty, we lost the sight of them, and knew not whether they put into any creeke. or sayled forward, but we held on our course, South-south east with a North-west wind, and then South-east, betweene two Ilands, vntill we were inclosed with Ice againe, and saw no open water, whereby we supposed that they were about the VVeigats, and that the North-west wind had driuen the Ice into that creeke, and being so inclosed vñ Ice, & saw no open water before vs, but with great labour and paines, we went back againe to the two Ilands aforesaid, and there about the North-east sunne, we made our Scutes fast at one of the Ilands, for as then it began to blowe hard.

The 30. of July lying at anchor, the wind still blew North-west, with great store of raine, and a sore stormе, so that although we had couered our Scutes with our sailes, yet we could not lye dry, which was an vnaccustomed thing vnto vs: for we had had no raine in long time before, and yet we were forced to stay there all that day.

The 31. of July, in the morning, about the North-east sunne, we rowed frõ that Iland to another Iland, whereon there stood two crosses, whereby we thought that some men had laine there

about

about trade of merchandise, as the other Russians that we saw before had done, but we found no man there, the wind as then beeing North-west, whereby the Ice drawe still towards the Weigats: there, to our great good, we went on land, for in that Island, we found great store of Lople leaues, which serued vs exceeding well, and it seemed that God had purposely sent vs thither: for as then we had many sicke men, and most of vs were so troubled with a scouring in our bodies, and were thereby become so weake, that we could hardly row, but by meanes of those leaues, we were healed thereof: for that as sone as we had eaten them, we were presently eased and healed, whereat we could not chose but wonder, & therefore we gaue God great thanks, for that, and for many other his mercies shewed vnto vs, by his great and vnexpected ayd lent vs, in that our dangerous voyage: and so as I sayd before, we eate them by whole handfuls together, because in Holland wee had heard much spoken of their great force, and as then found it to be much more then we expected.

The 1. of August the wind blew hard North-west and the Ice that for a while had driuen towards the entry of the Weigats, stayed and drawe no more, but the sea went very hollow, whereby we were forced to remoue our Scutes on the other side of the Island, to defend them from the waues of the sea, and lying there we went on land againe to fetch more Lople leaues, whereby wee had bin so wel holpen, & still more and more recouered our healths, and in so short time, that we could not chose but wonder thereat, so that as then some of vs could eate bisket againe, which not long before they could not do.

The 2. of August it was dark misty weather, the wind still blowing stiffe northwest, at which time our victuals began to decrease, for as then we had nothing but a little bread and water, and some of vs a little cheese, which made vs long sore to be gone frō thence, specially in regard of our hunger, whereby our weake members began to be much weaker, and yet we were forced to labour sore, which were two great contraries: for it behoued vs rather to haue our bellies full, that so we might be the stronger, to indure our labour, but patience was our point of trust.

The 3. of August, about the North sun, the weather being somewhat better, we agreed amongst our selues to leaue Noua Zembla

and to crosse ouer to Russia, and so committing our selues to God, we set saile with a North-west wind, & sailed South South-west till the Sun was east, and then we entred into Ice againe, which put vs in great feare, for we hadcrost ouer and left the Ice vpon Noua Zembla, & were in good hope y we should not mæt with any Ice againe, in so short space, at which time being in the Ice, with calme weather, whereby our Sailes could doe vs no great good, we stroke our sailes and began to row againe, and at last we rowed cleane through the Ice, not without great & sore labour, and about the South-west Sunne got clére thereof, and entred into the large sea, where we saw no Ice, and then what with sailing and rowing we had made 20. miles, & so sailing forwards we thought to approch nére vnto the Russian coast; but about the North-west Sunne, we entred into Ice againe, and then it was very cold, wherewith our hearts became very heauy, fearing that it would alwaies continew in that sort, and that we should neuer be freed thereof, and for that our boate could not make so good way, nor was not able to saile aboue the point of Ice, we were compelled to enter into the Ice, for that being in it, we perceiued open sea beyond it, but the hardest matter was to get into it, for it was very close, but at last we found a meanes to enter, and got in, and being entred it was somewhat better, and in the end with great paine and labour We got into the open water: our Maister that was in the scute, which sailed better then our boate got aboue the point of the Ice, and was in some feare that we were inclosed with y Ice, but God sent vs the meanes to get out from it, as sone as he could saile about the point thereof, and so we met together againe.

The 4 of August, about the South-east Sunne, being gotten out of the Ice, we sailed forward with a North-west wind, and held our course Southerly, and when the Sunne was South, at none time we saw the coast of Russia, lying before vs, whereat we were exceeding glad, and going néerer vnto it, we stroke our sailes and rowed on land, and found it to be very low land, like a bare strand that might be flowed ouer with the water; there we lay till the Sun was South-west, but perceiuing that there we could not much further our selues, hauing as thē sailed from the point of Noua Zembia, (from whence we put off) thither, ful 30 miles, we sailed forward along by the coast of Russia. With an indifferēt gale of

wind

wind, and when the Sunne was North, we saw another Russian Jolle or ship, which we sailed vnto to speake with them, and being hard by them, they came al aboue hatches, and we cried vnto them Candinaes Candinaes (whereby we asked them if we were about Candinaes) but they cryed againe and sayd pitzora Pitzora (to shew vs that we were there abouts) & for ẏ we sailed along by the coast, where it was very drie, supposing that we held our course, west and by North, that so we might get beyond the point of Candinaes; we were wholy deceiued by our cõpas, that stood vpon a chest boũd wͭ yron bands, which made vs vary at least 2. points, whereby we were much more southerly thẽ we thougth our course had bin, & also farre more easterly, for we thought verily that we had not bin farre from Candinaes, and we were thrée daies sailing from it, as afer we perceiued, & for that we found our selues to be so much out of our way, we stayed there all night til day appeared.

The 5. of August, lying there, one of our men went on shore, and found the land further in, to be gréene, and ful of trées, & from thence called to vs, to bid vs bring our péeces on shore, saying that there was wild déere to be killed, which made vs excéeding glad, for then our victuales were almost spent, and we had nothing but some broken bread, whereby we were wholy out of comfort, and some of vs were of opinion that we should leaue the Scutes, and goe further into the land, or else they said, we should all die with hunger, for that many daies before we were forced to fast, and hunger was a sharpe sword, which we could hardly endure any longer.

The 6. of August, the weather began to be somewhat better, at which time we determined to row forward because the wind was against vs, that we might get out of the créeke, the wind being East South-east which was our course as then, and so hauing rowed about thrée miles we could get no further, because it was so full in the wind, and we al together heartlesse and faint; the land streatching further North-east then we made account it had done, whereupon we beheld each other in pittifull manner, for we had great want of victuals, and knew not how farre we had to saile before we should get any reléefe, for al our victuals was almost consumed.

The 7. of August, the wind being west North west, it serued

vs well to get out of that crœke, and so we sailed forward East, and by North, till we got out of the crœke, to the place, and the point of land, where we first had bin, and there we made our Scutes fast againe: for the North-west wind was right against vs, whereby our mens hearts and courages were wholy abated, to sée no issue, how we should get from thence: for as then sicknesses, hunger, and no means to be found how to get from thence, consumed both our flesh and our bloud, but if we had found any reléefe, it would haue bin better with vs.

The 8. of August, there was no better weather, but still the wind was against vs, and we lay a good way one from the other, as we found best place for vs, at which time there was most dislike in our boate, in regard that some of vs were exceeding hungrie, and could not endure it any longer, but were wholy out of heart still wishing to die.

The 9. of August, it was all one weather, so that the wind blowing contrary, we were forced to lye still, and could goe no further, our greefe still increasing more & more, at last two of our men went out of the Scute, wherein the Maister was, which we perceiuing, two of our men also landed, and went altogether about a mile into the countrie, and at last saw a banke, by the which there issued a great streame of water, which we thought to be the way from whence the Russians came, betwéene Candinaes & the firme land of Russia, and as our men came backe againe, in the way as they went along, they found a dead sea-horse, that stanke exceedingly, which they drew with thē to our Scute, thinking that they should haue a dainty morsell out of it, because they endured so great hunger, but we told thē that without doubt it would kil vs, & that it were better for vs, to endure pouerty and hunger for a time, then to venture vpon it, saying, that séeing God who in so many great extremitys had sent vs a happie issue, stil liued, and was exceeding powerfull, we hoped and nothing doubting, that he would not altogether forsake vs, but rather helpe vs, when we were most in dispaire.

The 10. of August, it was stil a North-west wind with mistie & darke weather, so that we were driuen to lie still, at which time it was no néed for vs to aske one another how we fared, for we could well gesse it by our countenances.

The

The 11. of August, in the morning, it was faire calme weather, so that the Sunne being about north-east, the master sent one of his men to vs, to bid vs prepare our selues to set saile, but we had made our selues ready thereunto before he came, and began to rowe towards him, at which time for that I was very weake and no longer able to rowe, as also for that our boate was harder to rowe then the Scute, I was set in the Scute, to guide the helme, and one that was stronger, was sent out of the Scute into the boate to rowe in my place, that we might kéepe company together, and so we rowed till ỹ Sunne was south, and then we had a good gale of wind out of the south, which made vs take in our oares, and then we hoised vp our sailes, wherewith we made good way, but in the euening the wind began to blowe hard, whereby we were forced to take in our sailes and to rowe towards the land, where we laid our Scutes vpon the Strand, and went on land to séeke for fresh water, but found none, and because we could goe no further, we laid our sailes ouer the boates to couer vs from the weather, at which time it began to raine very hard, and at midnight it thundred, and lightned, with more store of raine, where with our company were much disquieted, to see that they found no meanes of release, but still entred into further trouble and danger.

The 12. of August, it was faire weather, at which time the Sunne being east, we saw a Russia Lodgie come towards vs, with al his sailes vp, wherewith we were not a little comforted, which we perceauing from the strand, where we laie with our Scutes, we desired the master that we might goe vnto him, to speake with him, and to get some victuales of them, and to that end we made as much haste as we could, to launche out our Scutes and sailed toward them, and when we got to them, the master went into the Lodgie, to aske them how farre we had to Cardinaes, which we could not well learne of them, because we vnderstood them not, they held vp their fiue fingers vnto vs, but we knew not what they ment thereby, but after we perceaued, that thereby they would shew vs, that there stod fiue Crosses vpon it, and they brought their compas out and shewed vs that it lay North west frō vs, which our compas also shewed vs, which reckning also we had made: but when we saw we could haue no

better

better intelligence from them, the master went further into their ship, & pointed to a barrell of fish ẏ he saw therein, making signes to know, whether they would sel it vnto vs, showing them a peece of 8. royles, which they vnderstanding, gaue vs 102. fishes, with some cakes, which they had made of meale, when they sod their fishe, and about the south Sunne we left them, being glad that we had gotten some victuales, for long before we had had but two ounces of bread a day, with a little water and nothing else, and with that we were forced to comfort our selues as well as we could: the fishes we shared amongst vs equally, to one as much as another, without any difference, & when we had left thē, we held our course west and by north, with a south, and a south and by east wind, and when the Sunne was west-south-west it began to thunder and raine, but it continued not long, for shortly after the weather began to cleare vp againe, and passing forward in that sort, we saw the Sunne in our common Compas, go downe north and by west.

The 13. of August, we had the wind against vs, being west-south-west, and our course was west and by north, whereby we were forced to put to the shore againe, where two of our men went on the land, to see how it laie, and whether the point of Candinaes reacht not out from thence into the sea, for we gess that we were not farre from it, our men comming againe, showed vs that they had sēne a house vpon the land, but no man in it, and said further that they could not perceaue, but that it was the point of Candinaes that we had sēne, wherewith we were somewhat comforted, and went into our Scutes againe, and rowed along by the land, at which tūne hope made vs to be of good cōfort, & procured vs to doe more then we could well haue done, for our liues and maintenance consisted therein, and in that sort rowing along by the land: we saw an other Russian Jollie lying vpon the shore, which was broken in peces, but we past by it, and a little after that, we saw a house at the water-side, whereunto some of our men went, wherein also they found no man, but onely an ouen, and when they came againe to the Scute, they brought some leple leaues with them which they had found as they went, and as we rowed along by the point, we had a good gale of winde out of the east, at which time we hoised vp our

sailes

sailes, & sailed forward, and after noone, about the south-west Sunne, we perceaued that the point, which we had séene, laie south-ward, whereby we were fully perswaded that it was the point of Candinaes, frō whence we went to saile ouer the mouth of the white sea, and to that end we boarded each other and deuided our candles, and all other things that we should néed amongst vs, to helpe our selues therewith, and so put of from the land, thinking to passe ouer the white sea, to the coast of Russia, and sailing in that sort, with a good winde, about midnight there rose a great storme out of the north, wherewith we stroke saile, and made it shorter, but our other boate that was harder vnder saile, (knowing not that we had lessened our sailes,) sailed forward, whereby we straied one from the other, for then it was very darke.

The 14. of August, in the morning, it being indifferent good weather with a south-west wind, we sailed west north-west, and then it began to cleare vp, so that we saw our boate, and did what we could to get vnto her, but we could not, because it began to be misty weather againe, and therefore we said vnto each other, let vs hold on our course, we shal finde them well enough, on the north coast, when we are past the white sea, our course was west-north-west, the wind being south-west and by west, and about the south-west Sunne, we could get no further, because the wind fel contrary, whereby we were forced to strike our sailes, and to row forward, and in that sort rowing till the Sunne was west, there blew an indifferent gale of wind out of the east and therewith we set saile, and yet we rowed with two oares, till the Sunne was north-north-west, and then the wind began to blow somewhat stronger east, and east-south-east, at which time we toke in our oares, and sailed forward west-north-west.

The 15. of August, wee saw the sunne rise east north-east, whereupon we thought that our compasse varied somewhat, and when the sunne was east, it was calme weather againe, wherewith we were forced to take in our sailes, and to row againe, but it was not long before wee had a gale of winde out of the south-east, and then we hoysed vp our sailes againe, and went forward west and by south, and sayling in that manner, with a good fore-

Wind, when the sunne was South, we saw land, thinking that as then we had béene on the west side of the white sea, beyond Candinaes, and being close vnder the land, we saw fire Russian Lodgies, lying there, to whom we sailed, and spake with them, asking them how farre wée were from Kilduin, but although they vnderstood vs not well, yet they made vs such signes that we vnderstood by them that we were still farre from thence, and that we were yet on the East side of Candinaes: & with that they stroke their hands together, thereby signifying ỳ we must first passe ouer the white sea, and that our Scutes were too little to doe it, and that it would be ouer great daunger for vs to passe ouer it, with so small Scutes, and that Candinaes was still North-west from vs, then wee asked them for some bread, and they gaue vs a loafe, which wée eate hungerly vp as wée were rowing, but wée would not beleeue them, that we were still on the east side of Cardinaes, for we thought verily that wee had past ouer the white sea, and when we left them, we rowed along by the land, the wind béeing North, and about the North-west sunne, we had a good wind againe from the South-east, and therewith we sayled along by the shore, and saw a great Russian Lodgie, lying on the Starreboord from vs, which we thought came out of the white sea.

The 16. of August in the morning, saying forward North-west, wée perceiued that we were in a Créeke, & so made towards ỳ Russian Lodgie, which we had séene on our Starreboord, which at last with great labour and much paine, we got vnto, and comming to them about the South east sunne, with a hard wind, we asked them how farre we were from Sembla de Cool or Kilduin, but they shooke their heads, and shewed vs that we were on the east side of Zembla de Candinaes, but we would not beléeue them, and then we asked them some victuals, wherewith they gaue vs certaine plaice, for the which the maister gaue them a péece of money, and sailed from them againe, to get out of that hole, where wée were, as it reacht into the sea; but they perceiuing that we tooke a wrong course, and that the flood was almost past, sent two men vnto vs, in a small boate, with a great loafe of bread which they gaue vs, and made signes vnto vs to come aboord of their ship againe, for that they intended to haue further spéech with vs, and to help vs, which we séeming not to refuse, and desiring not to be vn-

vnthankfull, gaue them a péece of money, and a péece of linnen cloth, but they stayed still by vs, and they that were in the great Lodgie, held vp bacon and butter vnto vs, to moue vs to come a bord of them againe, and so we did: and being with them, they shewed vs that we were stil on the east side of the point of Candinaes, then we fetcht our card and let them sée it, by the which they shewed vs, that we were still on the east side of the white sea, and of Cardinaes, which we vnderstanding, were in some doubt with our selues, because we had so great a voiage to make ouer the white sea, and were in more feare for our companions that were in the boate, as also ỹ hauing sailed 22. miles along by the Russian coast, we had gotten no further, but were then to saile ouer the mouth of the white sea, with so small prouision, for which cause the master bought of ỹ Russians thrée sacks w̃ meale, two flitches and a halfe of bacon, a pot of Russia butter, and a runlet of honny for prouision for vs and our boate, when we should mæt with it againe, & for ỹ in the meane time, the flod was past we sailed with the ebbe, out of the aforesaid Trœke, where the Russians boate came to vs, and entred into the sea with a god South-east wind, holding our course North north-west, and there we saw a point that reacht out into the sea, which we thought to be Candinaes, but we sailed still forward, and the land reached North-west: in the euening the sunne being North-west: when we saw that we did not much god with rowing, and that the streame was almost past, we lay still, and sod a pot full of water and meale, which tasted exceeding well, because we had put some bacon fat and honny into it, so that we thought it to be a festiuall day with vs, but still our minds ran vpon our boate, because we knew not where it was.

The 17. of August lying at anchor, in the morning at breake of day, we saw a Russian Lodgie that came sayling out of the white sea, to whom we rowed, that we might haue some instruction frõ him, and when wé borded him, without asking or speaking vnto him, he gaue vs a loafe of bread, and by signes shewed vs as well as he could, that he had séene our companions, and that there was seuen men in the boate, but we not knowing well what they sayd, neither yet beléeuing them, they made other signes vnto vs, and held vp their seuen fingers, and pointed to our Scute, there

by shewing that there was so many men in the boate, and that they had sold them bread, flesh, fish, and other victualls: and while we staid in their Lodgie, we saw a small compasse therein, which we knew that they had bought of our chiefe Boatson, which they likewise acknowledged, then we vnderstanding them well, askt them how long it was since they saw our boate, and whereabouts it was, they made signes vnto vs, that it was the day before: and to conclude, they shewed vs great friendship, for the which we thanked them, and so being glad of the good newes wée had heard, we toke our leaues of them, much reioycing that wée heard of our companions welfare, and specially because they had gotten victuals from the Russians, which was the thing that wée most doubted of, in regard that wée knew what small prouision they had with them, which done, we rowed as hard as we could, to try if we might ouertake them, as being still in doubt, that they had not prouision inough, wishing that they had had part of ours: and hauing rowed al that day with great labour along by the land, about midnight we found a fall of fresh water, and then we went on land to fetch some, and there also we got some Lepie leaues, and as we thought to row forward, we were forced to saile, because the flood was past, and still wee lokt earnestly out for the point of Cardinaes, and the fiue Crosses, whereof we had béene instructed by the Russians, but we could not sée it.

The 18. of August in the morning, the sunne being East, wée puld vp our stone, (which we vsed in stéed of an anchor) and rowed along by the land, till the sunne was south, and then wée saw a point of land, reaching into the sea, and on it certaine signes of crosses, which as we went néerer vnto, wee saw perfectly, and when the sunne was west, wee perceiued that the land reached West and South-west, so that thereby we knew it certainly to be the point of Candinaes, lying at the mouth of the white sea, which we were to crosse, and had long desired to sée it. This point is easily to be knowne, hauing fiue crosses standing vpon it, which are perfectly to be decerned, one the East side, in the South-east, and one the other side in the South-west, and when we thought to saile from thence, to the West side of the white sea towards the coast of Norway, we found that one of our runlets of fresh water was almost leakt out, and for that we had about 40. Duch miles

to

to saile ouer the sea, before we should get any fresh water, we sought meanes first to row on land, to get some, but because the waues wēt so high we durst not do it, & so hauing a good north-east wind, (which was not for vs too slack) we set forward in the name of GOD, and when the Sunne was North-west, we past the point, and all that night and the next day sailed with a good wind, and all that time rowed but while three glasses were run out, and the next night after ensuing, hauing still a good wind, in the morning about the East North-east Sunne, we saw land, one the West side of the whit sea, which we found by the rushing of the sea vpon the land, before we saw it, and perceiuing it to be ful of clifts, and not low sandy ground with same hils, as it is on the east side of the white sea, we assured our selues that we were on ỹ west side of the white sea, vpon the coast of Lapeland, for the which we thanked GOD, that he had helped vs to saile ouer the white sea in thirty houres, it being forty Dutch miles at the least, our course being West with a North-east wind

The 20. of August, being not farre from the land, the North-east wind left vs, and then it began to blow stiffe North-west, at which time seeing we could not make much way by sailing forward, we determined to put in betweene certaine clifts, and when we got close to the land, we espied certaine crosses, with warders vpon them, whereby we vnderstood, that it was a good way, and so put into it, and being entred a litle way within it, we saw a great Russian lodgie lying at an anchor, whereunto we rowed as fast as we could, and there also we saw certaine houses wherein men dwelt, and when we got to the Lodgie, we made our selues fast vnto it, and cast our tent ouer the Scute, for as then it began to raine, then we went on land into the houses that stood vpon the shore, where they shewed vs great friendship, leading vs into their stoaues, and there dried our wet clothes, and then seething some fish, bade vs sit downe and eate somwhat with them. In those litle houses we found thirteene Russians who euery morning went out to fish in the sea, whereof two of them had charge ouer the rest, they liued very poorely, and ordinarily eate nothing but fish & bread: at euening when we prepared our selues to go to our scute againe, they prayed the maister and me to stay with them in their houses, which the maister thanked them for, would not do, but I

stayed with them al that night; besides those thirténe men, there was two Laplanders more, and thrée women with a child, that lined very poorely of the ouerplus which the Russians gaue them, as a peece of fish, and some fishes heades, which the Russians threw away, and they with great thankfulnesse toke them vp, so that in respect of their pouertie, we thought our selues to bee well furnished: & yet we had litttle inough, but as it seemed, their ordinary liuing was in that manner, and we were forced to stay there, for that the wind being Northwest, it was against vs.

The 21. of August it rained most part of the day, but not so much after dinner as before, then our maister brought good store of fresh fish, which we sod, and eate our bellies full, which in long time we had not done, and therewith sod some meale and water, in steed of bread, whereby we were well comforted. After none, when the raine began to lessen, we went further into the land, and sought for some Leple leaues, and then we saw two men vpon ỹ hilles, whereupon we said one to the other, hereabouts there must more people dwel, for there came two men towards vs, but we regarding them not, went backe againe to our Scute, and towards the houses: the two men that were vpon the hilles (being some of our men that were in the boate) perceauing the Russian lodgie, came downe the hill towards her, to buy some victuales of them, who being come thither vnawares, and hauing no mony about them, they agréed betweene them to put off one of their paire of breches, (for that as then we ware two or thrée paire, one ouer the other) to sel them for some victuales, but when they came downe the hill, and were somewhat nérer vnto vs, they espied our Scute lying by the lodgie, and we as then beheld them better, and knew them, wherewith we reioyced, and shewed each other of our proceedings, and how we had sailed to and fro in great necessitie and hunger, and yet they had béene in greater necessitie and danger then we, and gaue God thankes, that he had preserued vs aliue, and brought vs together againe, and then we eate some thing together, and dranke of the cleare water, such as runneth along by Collen through the Rem, and then we agréed that they should come vnto vs, that we might saile together.

The 22. of August, the rest of our men with the boate came vnto vs, about the East South east Sunne, whereat we much reioy-

ced

ted, and then we prayed the Russians coke, to bake a sacke of meale for vs, and to make it bread, paying him for it, which he did, and in the meane time, when the fishermen came with their fishe out of the sea, our maister bought foure Cods of them, which we sod and eate, and while we were at meat, the chiefe of the Russians came vnto vs, and perceiuing that we had not much bread, he fetcht a loafe and gaue it vs, and although we desired them to sit downe and eate some meat with vs, yet we could by no meanes get thē to graunt thereunto, because it was their fasting day, & for y we had poured butter and fat into our fish: nor we could not get them once to drinke with vs, because our cup was somewhat greasie, they were so superstitious touching their fasting and religion, neither would they lend vs any of their cups to drinke in, least they should likewise be greased, at that time the wind was North-west.

The 23. of August, the Coke began to knead our meale, and made vs bread thereof, which being don, and the wind and weather beginning to be somewhat better, we made our selues ready to depart from thence, at which time, when the Russians came from fishing, our maister gaue their chiefe commander a good peece of mony, in regard of the frendship that he had shewed vs, and gaue some what also to the coke, for the which they yelded vs great thankes, at which time the chiefe of the Russians, desired our maister to giue him some gunpowder which he did, and when we were ready to saile from thence, we put a sacke of meale into the boate, least we should chance to stray one from the other againe, that they might help them selues therewith, and so about euening when the Sunne was West, we set saile and departed from thence, when it began to be high water, & with a North-east wind, held our course North-west along by the land.

The 24. of August, the wind blew East, and then the Sunne being East, we got to the seuen Ilands, where we found many fishermen, of whom we enquired after Cool and Kilduin, and they made signes that they lay West from vs, (which we likewise gest to be so, (and withall they shewed vs great frendship, and cast a Cod into our Scute, but for that we had a good gale of wind, we could not stay to pay them for it, but gaue them great thanks, much wondering at there great courtesy, and so with a good gale of

wind

wind, we arriued before the seuen Iſlands, when the Sun was South-west, and past betweene them and the land, and there found certaine fishermen, that rowed to vs, & asked vs where our Crable (meaning our ship) was, whereunto wee made answere with as much Russian Language as we had learned, & said, Crable pro Pal (y is our ship is lost) which they vnderstanding said vnto vs, Cool Brabouse Crable whereby we vnderstood that at Cool there was certaine Neatherland ships, but we made no great account therof because our intent was to saile to VVare-house, fearing least the Russians or great Prince of the country, would stay vs there.

The 25. of August, sailing along by the land with a South-east wind, about the South Sun, we had a sight of Kilduin, at which time we held our course West North-west, and sailing in this manner betweene Kilduin and the firme land, about the South South-west Sunne, we got to the West end of Kilduin, and being there lokt if we could see any houses, or people therein, and at last we saw certaine Russian lodgies that lay vpon the strand, and there finding a conuenient place for vs to Anchor with our Scutes, while we went to know if any people were to be found, our maister put in with the land, and there found fiue or six small houses, wherein the Laplanders dwelt, of whom we asked if that were Kilduin, whereunto they made answere, & shewed vs that it was Kilduin, & said y at Coola there lay three Brabants Crables or ships, whereof two were that day to set saile, which we hearing determined to saile to Ware-house, and about the West, South-west sunne, put off from thence with a South-east wind: but as we were vnder saile, the wind blew so stiffe, that wee durst not keepe the sea in the night time, for that the waues of the sea went so hollow, that we were still in doubt that they would smite the Scutes to the ground, and so toke our course behind two clifts, towards the land, and when we came there, wee found a small house vpon the shore, wherein there was three men and a great dogge, which receiued vs very friendly, asking vs of our affaires, and how we got thither, whereunto we made answere, and shewed them that we had lost our ship, and that we were come thither to see if we could get a ship that would bring vs into Holland: whereunto they made vs answere as the other Russians had done,

that

that there was three ships at Coola, whereof two were to set saile from thence that day, then we asked them if they would goe with one of our men by land to Coola, to looke for a ship, wherewith we might get into Holland, and said we would reward them well for their paines, but they excused themselues and said, that they could not go from thence, but they sayd that they would bring vs ouer the hill, where we should finde certaine Laplanders whom they thought would go with vs, as they did: for the maister and one of our men, going with them ouer the hill, found certaine Laplanders there, whereof they got one to go with our man, promising him two royals of eight for his pains, and so the Laplander going with him, toke a peece on his necke, and our man a boate-hooke, and about euening they set forward, the wind as then being East, and East North-east.

The 26. of August it was faire weather the wind South east, at which time we drew vp both our Scutes vpon the land, and toke all the goods out of them, to make them the lighter, which done, we went to the Russians and warmed vs, and there dressed such meates as we had, and then againe wee began to make two meales a day, when we perceiued that we should euery day find more people, and we dranke of their drinke which they call Quas, which was made of broken peeces of bread, and it tasted well: for in long time we had drunke nothing else but water: some of our men went further into the land & there found blew berries, and bramble berries, which they plucked and eate, and they did vs much good, for we found that they healed vs of our lowsenesse, the wind still blew South-east.

The 27. of August, it was foule weather with a great storm, North, and North North-west, so that in regard that the Strand was low, and as also for that the spring tide was ready to come on, we drew our Scutes a great way vp vpon the land, which hauing done, wee went to the Russians to warme vs by their fire and to dresse our meate: meane time the maister sent one of our men to the sea side to our Scutes, to make a fire for vs vpon the Strand, that when we came we might finde it ready, and that in the meane time the smoake might be gone, and while one of our men was there, and the other was going thither, the water drawe so high, that both our Scutes were smitten into the water, and in

great danger to be cast away, for in the Scute there was but two men, and three in the boate, who with much labour and paine, could hardly kéep the Scutes from being broken vpon the strand, which we séeing, were in great doubt, and yet could not help them, yet God be thanked, he had then brought vs so farre, that neuertheleste we could haue gotten home, although wee should haue lost our Scutes, as after it was séene. That day, and all night it rained sore, whereby we indured great trouble and miserie, being throughly wet, and could neither couer nor defend our selues frō it, and yet they in the Scutes indured much more, being forced to bee in that weather, and still in daunger to bee cast vpon the shore.

The 28. of August it was indifferent good weather, and then we drew the Scutes vpon the land againe, that we might take the rest of the goods out of them, because the wind still blew hard north, and north-north-west, and hauing drawne the Scutes vp, we spread our sailes vpon them, to shelter vs vnder them, for it was still misty, and rainie weather, much desiring to heare some newes of our man, that was gone to Cola with the Lapelander, to know if there were any shipping at Coola to bring vs into Holland, and whyle we laie there we went into the land and fetcht some blew berries and bramble berries to eate, which did vs much good.

The 29. of August it was indifferent faire weather, and we were still in good hope to heare some good newes from Cola, and alwaies looked vp towards the hill to sée if our man and the Lapelander came, but séeing they came not, we went to the Kylians againe, and there drest our meate, and then ment to goe to our Scutes to lodge in them all night, in the meane time we spied the Laplander cōming alone without our man whereat we wondred, and were somewhat in doubt, but when he came vnto vs, he shewed vs a letter that was written vnto our maister, which he opened before vs, the contents thereof being, that he that had written the letter wondred much at our arriuall in that place, and that long since he verily thought that we had béene all cast away, being exceeding glad of our happy fortune, and how that he would presently come vnto vs, with victuales and all other necessaries to succour vs withall, we being in no small admiration

who

who it might be, that shewed vs so great fauour and friendship, could not imagine what he was, for it appeared by the letter, that he knew vs well: and although the letter was subscribed, by ms Iohn Cornelison Rip, yet we could not be perswaded, that it was the same Iohn Cornelison, who the yéere before had béene set out in the other ship with vs, and left vs about the Beare Iland: for those good newes we paid the Lapelander his hier, and beside that gaue him hoase, breeches and other furniture, so that he was apparelled like a Hollander: for as then we thought our selues to be wholy out of danger, and so being of good comfort, we laid vs downe to rest: Here I cannot chuse but shew you how fast the Lapelander went: for when hee went to Cola, as our companion told vs, they were two dayes and two nights on the way, and yet went a pace, and when he came backe againe, he was but a day & a night cõming to vs, which was wonderful, it being but halfe ỹ time, so that we said, & verily thought, that he was halfe a coniurer and he brought vs a partridge which he had killed by the way as he went.

The 30. of August it was indifferent faire weather, we still wondering who that Iohn Cornelison might be that had written vnto vs, and while we sate musing thereon, some of vs were of opinion that it might be the same Iohn Cornelison that had sayled out of Hollãd in company with vs, which we could not be perswaded to beléeue, because we were in as little hope of his life as hée of ours, supposing that he had sped worse then we, and long before that had béene cast away, at last the master said, I will looke amongst my letters, for there I haue his name written, and that will put vs out of doubt, & so looking amongst them, we found that it was the same Iohn Cornelison, wherewith we were as glad of his safety & welfare, as he was of ours, and while we were speaking thereof, and that some of vs would not beléeue that it was the same Iohn Cornelison, we saw a Russian Boll come rowing, with Iohn Cornelison and our companion, that wee had sent to Cola, who being landed, we receiued & welcomed each other, w great ioy & exceeding gladnesse, as if either of vs on both sides had séene each other rise from death to life again: for we estéemed him, & he vs to be dead long since: he brought vs a barrell of Rosvicke béere, wine, aqua uite, bread, flesh, bacon, Salmon, suger, and other

things which comforted and relæued vs much, and wee reioyced together for our so vnexpected mæting: at that time giuing God great thankes for his mercy shewed vnto vs.

The 31. of August it was indifferent faire weather, the wind Easterly, but in the euening it began to blow hard from the land, and then we made preparation to saile from thence to Cola, first taking our leaues of the Russians, and heartily thanking them for their curtesie shewed vnto vs, and gaue them a pæce of money for their good wils, and at night about the North-sunne we sailed from thence with a high water.

The 1. of September in the morning, with the East sunne, we got to ẏ west side of the riuer of Cola & entered into it, where we rowed till the flod was past, and then we cast the stones that serued vs for anchors, vpon the ground, at a point of land till the flod came in againe: and when the sunne was south, wee set saile againe with the flod, & so sailed and rowed till midnight, and then we cast anchor againe till morning.

The 2. of September in the morning, we rowed vp the riuer, and as we past along we saw some trees on the riuer side, w̄ comforted vs, and made vs as glad as if we had then come into a new world, for ẏ in all the time ẏ we had bæne out, we had not sæne any trees, & when we were by the the salt kettles, which is about thræe miles from Cola, we stayed there a while, & made merry, & then went forward againe, and with the West, North-west sun got to Iohn Cornelisons ship, wherein we entred and dronke: there wee began to make merry againe, with the sailers that were therein, and that had bæne in the voiage with Iohn Cornelison the yeare before, and bad each other welcome: then we rowed forward, & late in the euening got to Cola, where some of vs went on land, and some stayed in the Scutes to loke to the goods: to whom we sent milke and other things to comfort & refresh them, and we were all exceeding glad that God of his mercy had deliuered vs out of so many dangers and troubles, and had brought vs thither in safety: for as then wee estæmed our selues to be safe: although ẏ place in times past, lying so far from vs was as much vnknowne vnto vs as if it had bæne out of the world, & at that time being there, we thought ẏ we were almost at home.

The 3. of September we vnladed all our goods & there refreshed

our

our selues, after our toylesome and weary iourney, and the great hunger that we had indured, thereby to recouer our healthes and strengthes againe.

The 11. of September, by leaue and consent of the Bayart, gouernour for the great prince of Muscouia, we brought our Scute and our boate into the merchants house, and there let them stand for a remembrance of our long farre (& neuer before sailed way) and that we had sailed in those open Scutes, almost 400. Dutch miles, through and along by the sea coasts to the towne of Coola, whereat the inhabitants thereof could not sufficiently wonder.

The 15. of Sep. we went in a Lodgie, wt all our goods & our men to Iohn Cornelisons ship, which lay about halfe a mile from the towne, and that day sailed in the ship downe the riuer til we were beyond the narrowest part therof, which was about half the riuer, and there staied for Iohn Cornelison, and our Maister, that said they would come to vs the next day

The 17. of September Iohn Cornelison, and our Maister being come aboard, the next day about the East Sunne, we set saile out of the riuer Coola, & with GODS grace put to sea, to saile hom-wards, and being out of the riuer we sailed along by the land North-west, and by North, the wind being South.

The 19. of September, about the South Sunne, we got to Ware-house, and there ankored, and went on land, because Iohn Cornelison, was there to take in more goods, and staid there til the first of October, in the which time we had a hard wind out of the North and North west, & while we stayed there, we refreshed our selues somewhat better, to recouer our sickenesse and weakenesse againe, that we might grow stronger, which asked sometime, for we were much spent and exceeding weake.

The 6. of October, about euening, the Sunne being South-west, we set saile, and with GODS grace from VVare-house, for Holland, but for that it is a common and well knowne way, I will speake nothing thereof, only that vpon the 29. October, we ariued in the Mase, with an East north-east wind, & the next morning got to Maseland sluce, and there going on land, from thence rowed to Delfe, and then to the Hage, and from thence to Harlem, & vpon the first of Nouember about none, got to Amsterdam, in the same clothes that we ware in Noua Zembla, with our caps

furd with white Fores skins, and went to the house of Peter Hasselaer, that was one of the marchants, that set out the two ships, which were conducted by Iohn Cornelison, and our Maister, and being there, where many men wounded to see vs, as hauing esteemed vs long before that to haue bin dead and rotten, the newes thereof being spread abroad in the towne, it was also caried to the Princes court, in the Hage, at which time the Lord Chancelor of Denmark, Ambassador for the said King, was then at dinner with Prince Maurice: for the which cause we were presently fetcht thither by the Scout, and two of the Burgers of the towne, and there in the presence of those Ambassadors, and the Burger masters, we made rehearsall of our Iourney both forwards and backewards, and after that euery man that dwelt thereabouts went home but such as dwelt not neere to that place, were placed in good lodgings for certaine daies, vntill we had receiued our pay, and then euery one of vs departed, and went to the place of his aboad.

The names of those that came home againe from this dangerous voiage, were.

IAcob Heinskeck Maister and Factor.
Peter Peterson Vos.
Geret de Veer.
Maister Hans Vos, Surgion.
Iacob Iohnson, Sterenburg.
Lenard Hendrickson.
Laurence VVilliamson.
Iohn Hillbrantson.
Iacob Iohnson hooghwont.
Peter Cornelison.
Iohn Vous Buysen.
and Iacob Euartson.

FINIS.

F609
V4197
[R]